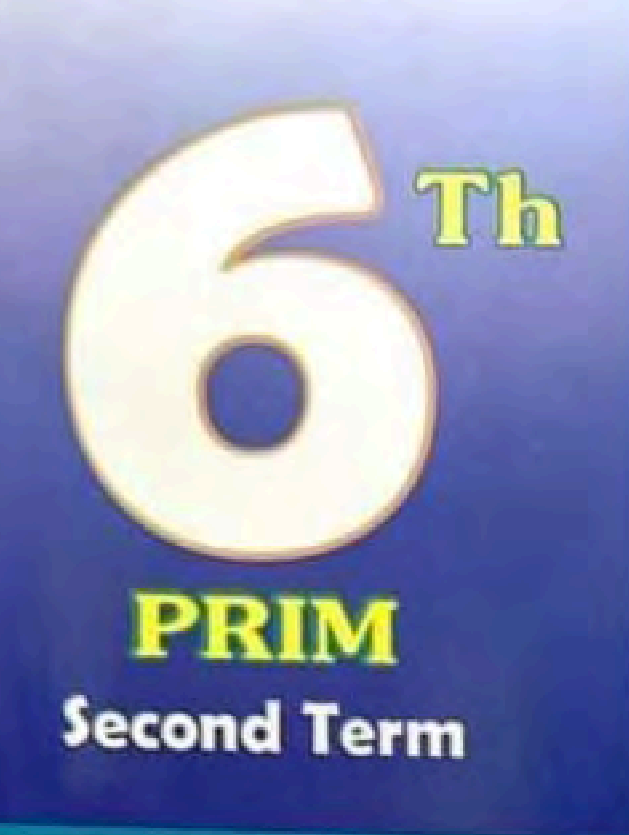


Step Ahead Series

Together to a bright future

2024

By a group of specialists



CONNECT



Contents

Part 1

Theme (3)
I discover myself

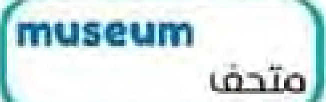
Theme (4)
Myself and others

Part 2

Lesson  1 A visit to the museum



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

museum متحف



guide مرشد سياحي



artifacts تحف - قطع أثرية



preserve يحفظ



granite جرانيت



clay طين صلصال



glass زجاج



gold ذهب



durable متين - قوي - مُعَمِّر



valuable قَيِّم - ثمين



fascinating مذهل - فاتن



tomb مقبرة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
ancient history	تاريخ قديم	materials	مواد
primary school	مدرسة ابتدائية	weather	طقس
reason	سبب	climate	مناخ
stone	حجر	the River Nile	نهر النيل
pots	أواني	the Pyramids	الأهرامات
papyrus	ورق البردي	forever	لوقت طويل - للأبد

Prepositions حروف الجر

Welcome to	مرحبًا بكم في	**in good condition**	في حالة جيدة
made of	مصنوع من	**for a long time**	لفترة طويلة
made from	مصنوع من	**covered ... in**	غطى ... بـ
first of all	أولًا	**close to**	بالقرب من

Adjectives صفات

excited	متحمس	**certain**	محددة - معينة
dry	جاف	**great**	عظيم - رائع
wet	رطب	**correct**	صحيح
hard	قاسٍ - صُلب	**interesting**	مثير للاهتمام - مُشوِّق

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
damage	يدمر - يُتلِف	damaged	damaged
preserve	يحفظ	preserved	preserved
use	يستخدم	used	used
last	يستمر - يدوم	lasted	lasted
cover	يغطي	covered	covered
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	enjoyed
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	learned (learnt)

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
have - has	يملك - لديه	had	had
build	يبني	built	built
find	يجد	found	found
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept

Lesson 1

Present		Past	PP
make	يصنع	made	made
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
know	يعرف	knew	known

The Lesson Notes

■ **made of** مصنوع من ◄ المادة الخام لا تتغير بعد الصُنع

▶ That picture is made of papyrus.

■ **made from** مصنوع من ◄ المادة الخام تتغير بعد الصُنع

▶ This juice is made from orange fruit.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

An artifact is an object that was made by humans in the past. The Khufu solar ship is an artifact from Ancient Egypt. It is the world's oldest intact ship.

القطعة الأثرية هي شيء صنعه البشر في الماضي. سفينة خوفو الشمسية هي قطعة أثرية من مصر القديمة. إنها أقدم سفينة تطفو على سطح الماء في العالم.

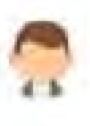




Read and learn



Why are Tamer and Tamara at the museum?
لماذا تامر وتمارا في المتحف؟



Mr Tarek : Good morning and welcome to the Museum of Ancient History. My name is Mr Tarek and I am your guide today.

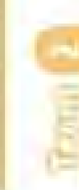
الأستاذ طارق : صباح الخير ومرحبًا بكم في متحف التاريخ القديم. اسمي الأستاذ طارق وأنا مرشدكم السياحي اليوم.



Tamer : Good morning, Mr Tarek. I'm Tamer and this is my sister Tamara. We're students at Egyptian Eagle Primary School, and these are our parents.



تامر : صباح الخير يا أستاذ طارق. أنا تامر وهذه أختي تمارا. نحن تلاميذ في مدرسة الصقر المصري الابتدائية، وهذان والدانا.



Tamara : We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.


تمارا : نحن متحمسون لمعرفة المزيد عن الآثار المصرية القديمة.

Mr Tarek : Great! What would you like to know?


الأستاذ طارق : عظيم! ماذا تريدون أن تعرفوا؟

Tamara : Well, first of all, why do we have so many **artifacts**?


تمارا : 
حسنًا أولًا، لماذا لدينا كل هذه الآثار؟

Mr Tarek : That's an interesting question. One reason is the climate. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to **preserve** them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with **granite**, a very hard and **durable** stone.

الأستاذ طارق : هذا سؤال مثير للاهتمام. أحد الأسباب هو المناخ. لدينا مناخ حار وجاف هنا في مصر، لذلك لا تتضرر الآثار بسبب الطقس البارد والرطب. وهذا يساعد على الحفاظ عليها. كما أن المصريين القدماء كانوا يعرفون أن موادًا معينة يمكن أن تدوم لفترة طويلة. ولهذا السبب بنوا الأهرامات بالجرانيت، وهو حجر شديد الصلابة والمتانة.


Tamer : That's **fascinating**! What other materials did they use?



تامر : هذا رائع! ما هي المواد الأخرى التي استخدموها؟

Mr Tarek : They used a lot of **glass**, which lasts forever. They also used **clay**, which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots.

الأستاذ طارق : لقد استخدموا الكثير من الزجاج والذي يدوم إلى الأبد. كما استخدموا طين الصلصال الموجود بالقرب من نهر النيل لصنع الأواني.

Tamer : I also heard they used a lot of **gold** in Tutankhamun's tomb.

تامر : لقد سمعتُ أيضًا أنهم استخدموا الكثير من الذهب في مقبرة توت عنخ آمون.

Mr Tarek : Yes, the Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable, but it is also very durable. When they covered artifacts in gold, they kept them in good condition.

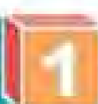
الأستاذ طارق : نعم، كان المصريون القدماء يحبون استخدام الذهب لأنه قيِّمٌ كما أنه متين للغاية كذلك. وعندما غطوا الآثار بالذهب، حافظوا عليها في حالة جيدة.

Tamer : I'm happy about that! It's exciting to enjoy the things they made.



تامر : أنا سعيد بذلك! إنه لمن المثير الاستمتاع بالأشياء التي صنعوها.

Exercises on Lesson 1





Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

durable – granite – artifacts – climate – preserve

We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so ① .... aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to ② .... them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with ③ .... , a very hard and ④ .... stone.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tomb – lasts – clay – Nile – Ancient

We're students at Egyptian Eagle Primary School. We're excited to learn more about ① .... Egyptian artifacts. They used a lot of glass, which ② .... forever. They also used ③ ...., which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots. I also heard they used a lot of gold in Tutankhamun's ④ ....

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Granite - Wood - Glass) is a very hard and durable stone.
2. The Ancient Egyptians used (clay - gold - glass), which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots.
3. We have a hot, dry (climate - artifacts - clay) here in Egypt.
4. Gold is a very (wet - cheap - valuable) metal.
5. Ancient Egyptians used gold for (artifacts - pyramids - pots) because it is valuable and durable.
6. (Plastic - Glass - Gold) is a very valuable metal.
7. The Egyptian climate is good for (preserving - damaging - covering) artifacts because it's hot and dry.
8. A (guide - doctor - vet) tells tourists information about the artifacts they see.
9. Granite is a very (non-durable - durable - wet) metal, so it lasts for a long time.
10. The Pyramids are (fascinating - boring - uninteresting). Many tourists like to visit them.

11. The Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with (wood - granite - paper) as it can last for a long time.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Why .... (is) Tamer and Tamara at the museum?
2. We .... (has) a hot, dry climate in Egypt.
3. I'm Tamer and this .... (be) my sister Tamara.
4. The Ancient Egyptians .... (build) the Pyramids with granite.
5. We .... (is) students at Egyptian Eagle Primary School.
6. The Ancient Egyptians .... (like) to use gold.
7. Ancient Egyptians .... (make) the Pyramids from granite.
8. What .... (are) your favorite Egyptian artifact?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. to use - Egyptians - liked - The Ancient - gold.

   ▶ ....

2. do - Why - we - have - artifacts - so many?

   ▶ .... ?

3. the Pyramids - made - Ancient Egyptians - granite - from.

   ▶ ....

4. artifact - Egyptian - favorite - your - What's?

   ▶ .... ?

5. Tamara - are Tamer and - Why - the museum - at?

   ▶ .... ?

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. where are tamer and tamara

▶ ....

2. we have a hot, dry climate in egypt

▶ ....

3. why do ancient egyptians build great tombs

▶ ....

7 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Jack:

Tell him how Ancient Egyptian history and artifacts are great. Invite him to visit Egypt soon. Your email address is hazem@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is jack@gmail.com.

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

......................,

....



Lesson 2 They loved animals

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



grain
حبوب - قمح



adore
يعشق - يهيم بـ



wisdom
حِكمة



statue
تمثال



mummified
مُحنّطة



Ancient Egyptians
المصريون القدماء

Animals & Birds in Ancient Egypt



baboon
قرد البابون



monkey
قرد



rat
فأر كبير



crocodile
تمساح



hippo
فرس النهر



ibis
طائر أبو منجل



falcon
صقر



snake
ثعبان

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

pets	حيوانات أليفة	mice (sin. mouse)	فئران صغيرة
pests	آفات	rats	فئران كبيرة
turtle	سلحفاة بحرية	snake	ثعبان

knowledge	معرفة	afterlife	الحياة الآخرة
decision	قرار	particularly	خاصة
seeds	بذور	especially	خصوصًا
trick	خدعة	object	شيء
oils	زيوت	picnic	نزهة
cloth	قماش	go hiking	يمارس المشي لمسافات طويلة

Prepositions حروف الجر

grow up	يكبر	look after	يعتني بـ
cover in	يغطي بـ	on a boat ride	في جولة بالقارب

Adjectives صفات

common	شائع	important	مهم
free of	خالٍ من	difficult	صعب
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
popular	رائج - شائع	nice	لطيف
everyday	يومي	local	محلي



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
produce	ينتج	produced	produced
believe	يعتقد	believed	believed
include	يشتمل على	included	included
love	يحب	loved	loved
mummify	يُحَنِّط	mummified	mummified
try	يحاول - يجرب	tried	tried
represent	يُمَثِّل	represented	represented
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after	looked after
want	يريد	wanted	wanted
start	يبدأ	started	started
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
drop	يُسقِط	dropped	dropped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
am - is - are	يكون	was - were	been
keep	يحتفظ بـ - يرعى	kept	kept
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
find	يجد	found	found

Present		Past	PP
go	يذهب	went	gone
fall over	يسقط	fell over	fallen over
hurt	يأذي - يجرح	hurt	hurt
win	يفوز - يكسب	won	won
become	يُصبح	became	become

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

grain	: seeds from plants used to make flour and bread
adored	: loved something very much
wisdom	: using your knowledge to make good decisions
mummify	: to cover in oils and clothes to preserve for a very long time
statue	: an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or animal

Read and learn



1. What was the Ancient Egyptians' favorite animal?

ما هو الحيوان المفضل لدى المصريين القدماء؟

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

أحَبَّ المصريون القدماء الحيوانات واحتفظوا بالعديد منها كحيوانات أليفة. لقد كانوا يعشقون القطط بشكل خاص، وكان هناك قطة في كل منزل تقريبًا. اعتقد المصريون القدماء أن القطط تعتني بهم وتبقيهم آمنين. لقد كانت أيضًا حيوانات أليفة جيدة لأنها كانت تنظف أنفسها وتجعل المنازل خالية من الآفات مثل الفئران والثعابين. وكان هذا مهمًا بشكل خاص للمزارعين الذين كانوا ينتجون الكثير من الحبوب. لم تأكل الفئران الحبوب لأن القطط أكلت الفئران!

2. What other animals did the Ancient Egyptians keep?

ما هي الحيوانات الأخرى التي احتفظ بها المصريون القدماء؟

As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. They weren't popular pets!

إلى جانب القطط، احتفظ الكثير من الناس بالقرود وقرود البابون. حتى أن بعض الناس احتفظوا بالتماسيح وأفراس النهر والأسود، والتي كانت خطيرة ويصعب الاعتناء بها. حيث لم تكن حيوانات أليفة رائجة!

3. Did the Ancient Egyptians keep birds as pets as well?

هل احتفظ المصريون القدماء بالطيور كحيوانات أليفة أيضًا؟

Yes, they did. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom. There are thousands of mummified ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life – they were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and statues of animals in the tombs.

نعم، لقد كانوا كذلك. أحَبَّ المصريون القدماء الطيور أيضًا، وخاصة الصقور وطائر أبو منجل، والذي كان يمثِّل الحكمة. يوجد الآلاف من طيور أبو منجل المحنطة في منطقة سقارة وحدها. لم تكن كل هذه الحيوانات الأليفة مهمة للحياة اليومية للمصريين القدماء فحسب، بل كانت مهمة أيضًا في الحياة الأُخرى. ولذلك فمن الشائع العثور على حيوانات أليفة محنطة وتماثيل للحيوانات في المقابر.

4. What animals are popular pets in Egypt today?

ما هي الحيوانات الأليفة الرائجة في مصر اليوم؟

Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt. Other animals that people keep today include, turtles, fish, and birds, which are of course much smaller and easier to look after than baboons and crocodiles.

في زمننا الحالي، لا تزال القطط حيوانات أليفة رائجة في مصر. هناك حيوانات أخرى يحتفظ بها الناس في زمننا الحالي، وتشمل السلاحف والأسماك والطيور، وهي بالطبع أصغر بكثير وأسهل في الاعتناء بها من قرود البابون والتماسيح.

Listening Script

Mayar: Hi Nesma! Did you have a nice weekend?

ميار: أهلًا يا نسمة! هل قضيتِ عطلة نهاية أسبوع لطيفة؟

Nesma: Hi Mayar! Yes, I did. I went to Al-Azhar Park with my family.

نسمة: أهلًا يا ميار! نعم، ذهبتُ إلى حديقة الأزهر مع عائلتي.

Mayar: What did you do there?

ميار: ماذا فعلتم هناك؟

Nesma: We had a picnic. Then we went on a boat ride. It was great!

نسمة: قمنا نزهة، ثم ذهبنا في رحلة بالقارب. كان ذلك رائعًا!

Mayar: Did you go hiking?

ميار: هل مارستم المشي لمسافات طويلة؟

Nesma: No, we didn't. We wanted to, but it started to rain. Did you have a good weekend?

نسمة: لا، لم نفعل. أردنا فعل ذلك، لكن بدأ المطر في الهطول. هل استمتعتِ بعطلة نهاية أسبوع جيدة؟

Mayar: No, I didn't. I fell over and hurt my arm, so I stayed in bed the whole time!

ميار: لا، لم أفعل. لقد سقطتُ وآذيتُ ذراعي، لذلك بقيتُ في السرير طوال العطلة!

GRAMMAR STUDY

Verb (to be) in the past الفعل (يكون) في الماضي

was	were
I - He - She - It - Singular (أي اسم مفرد)	You - We - They - Plural (أي اسم جمع)

- I was at the museum last month.
- She was at home on Friday.
- We were happy when reading about our history.
- Which was their favorite animal?
- Was there a mummy in the tomb? ▶ Yes, there was.
- Were there popular pets? ▶ No, there weren't popular pets.



The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I / He / She / It / You / We / They played	I / He / She / It / You / We / They did not play.... . / didn't play..... .	Did I play .... ? / he play .... ? / she play .... ? / it play .... ? / you play .... ? / we play .... ? / they play....... ?

Form: ▶▶▶ التصريف الثاني للفعل ◀◀◀ يتكون من

- The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets.
- The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them.

- We use it to express actions that happened in the past.
- نستخدمه للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت في الماضي.

- There are key words for the past simple tense such as:
- توجد كلمات دالة على زمن الماضي البسيط مثل:

Key words:

yesterday	أمس	in the past	في الماضي
ago	منذ	last.... (week)	(الأسبوع) الماضي

- Long ago, the Ancient Egyptians loved birds, especially falcons and the ibis.

- In the negative form, we use (didn't + infinitive) without (to):
- ننفي الماضي البسيط باستخدام (didn't) ثم الفعل في المصدر بدون (to). (مصدر الفعل هو التصريف الأول للفعل بدون أي إضافات).
  - Rats didn't eat the grain.

- In the interrogative form, we use (did) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the bare verb.
- عند عمل سؤال على الماضي البسيط، نبدأ السؤال بـ (did) أو نضعها بعد أداة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.
  - Did the Ancient Egyptians only keep cats as pets? ▶ Yes, they did.
  - What did they feed their cats? ▶ They fed them rats and pests.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

produced - grain - adored - Egyptians - pets

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as ① .... They particularly ② .... cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. Cats were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who ③ .... a lot of grain. The mice didn't eat the ④ .... because the cats ate the rats!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

statues - mummified - falcons - afterlife - wisdom

The Ancient Egyptians loved birds, especially ① ________ and the ibis, which represented wisdom. There are thousands of ② ________ ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life – they were also important in the ③ ________. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and ④ ________ of animals in the tombs.

3 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. (Grain - Pets - Cloth) refers to the seeds from plants used to make flour and bread.
2. When you (dislike - adore - hate) something, you love it very much.
3. (Wisdom - Material - History) means using your knowledge to make good decisions.
4. To (mummify - produce - damage) means to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time.
5. The Ancient Egyptians (adored - hated - disliked) cats. They loved them very much.
6. A (pyramid - museum - statue) is an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or animal.
7. A mouse and a mouse are two (rats - mice - turtles).
8. Cats are (pets - pests - birds).

4 Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. Pets (was - were - is) important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life.
2. Which (are - was - were) the Ancient Egyptians' favorite animal?
3. (Were - Was - Is) there a lot of mummies in the Ancient Egyptians' tombs?

4. What (are - was - were) cats doing in the Ancient Egyptians' houses?
5. Crocodiles, hippos, and lions (wasn't - weren't - isn't) popular pets in Ancient Egypt!
6. (Was - Were - Did) the rats eat the grain in Ancient Egypt?
7. (Was - Were - Did) there pets in your home last year?
8. The Ancient Egyptians (loves - loved - love) animals and kept many as pets.
9. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats (eating - eat - ate) the rats!
10. I fell over and (hurts - hurt - hurting) my arm.
11. What (was - were - did) they feed their cats in the past?
12. I didn't grow up in Alexandria. I (grows - growing - grew) up in Cairo.
13. (Did - Do - Were) you have a good weekend last Friday?
14. Rats didn't (eating - eat - ate) the grain.
15. Did the Ancient Egyptians (keep - kept - keeping) birds as pets as well?
16. The Ancient Egyptians (loves - loved - love) birds, especially falcons and the ibis.
17. A: Did you go hiking? B: No, we (did - weren't - didn't).
18. I didn't (grow - growing - grew) up in Aswan.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!
As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. They weren't popular pets!



A Choose the correct answer:

1. The Ancient Egyptians adored (rats - snakes - cats).
2. The farmers produced a lot of (pets - grain - pests).
3. Some people even kept crocodiles, (hippos - dolphins - elephants), and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after.

B Answer these questions:

4. What animals did the Ancient Egyptians love the most?
   ▶ ....
5. Why were cats good pets?
   ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The Ancient Egyptians .... (love) their pets. SB
2. They .... (teach) their monkeys different tricks. SB
3. The crocodiles quickly .... (become) dangerous pets. SB
4. The ibis .... (represent) wisdom. SB
5. They .... (wasn't) popular pets in the past!
6. Mice .... (doesn't) eat the grain in Ancient Egypt.
7. .... (Was) there a lot of mummies?
8. Which .... (were) the Ancient Egyptians' favorite animal?
9. .... (Do) the Ancient Egyptians only keep cats as pets?
10. What did they .... (feeding) their cats?
11. What did the Ancient Egyptians .... (believed) about cats?
12. They didn't .... (grew) up in Cairo.
13. The Ancient Egyptians .... (adore) cats.
14. What animals did the Ancient Egyptians .... (keeping)?
15. Did you .... (had) a nice weekend?
16. We .... (have) a picnic. Then we went on a boat ride.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. Egyptians - Ancient - The - animals - loved.
   ▶ ....
2. What - their cats - they - feed - did?
   ▶ .... ?
3. didn't - Rats - eat - grain - the.
   ▶ ....
4. mummies - of - a lot - there - Were?
   ▶ .... ?
5. was - I - a student - at - school - the local.
   ▶ ....
6. up - grow - you - did - Where?
   ▶ .... ?

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"What did you do last week?"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

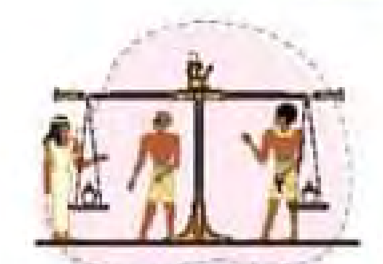




Lesson 3 Metal in Ancient Egypt

Part 1

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس




trade (v)(n) يتاجر - تجارة



economy الاقتصاد



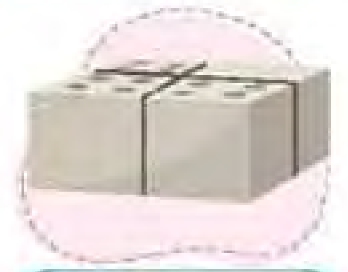
goods بضائع



tools أدوات



weapons أسلحة



stone حَجَر



rocks صخور



rare نادر



metal معدن



silver فضة



iron حديد



jewelry مجوهرات

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

presentation	عرض تقديمي	**decorations**	زخارف - ديكورات
system	نظام	**culture**	ثقافة
country	بلد	**craftsmen**	جِرَفيُّون
lines	خطوط	**sculptures**	منحوتات

shapes	أشكال	beard	لحية
mask	قناع	chin	ذقن
land	أرض	the top	قمة - أعلى - فوق
hunting	صيد	fighting	قتال

Prepositions حروف الجر

in	في	in front of	أمام
on	على	behind	خلف
under	تحت	next to	بجوار - بجانب
between	بين		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
melt	يُذيب - يصهر	melted	melted
hunt	يصطاد	hunted	hunted
form	يُشَكّل - يُكَوّن	formed	formed
trade	يتاجر	traded	traded
help	يساعد	helped	helped
produce	يُنتِج	produced	produced
call	يدعو - يسمي	called	called
heat	يُسَخّن	heated	heated
use	يستخدم	used	used
develop	يُطَوّر	developed	developed



Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
grow	يزرع	grew	grown
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
fight	يقاتل	fought	fought
tell	يخبر	told	told
find	يجد	found	found
hurt	يجرح	hurt	hurt

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

trade	: buying and selling things between countries
metal	: something, like gold or iron, that is hard and strong
weapon	: an object used for fighting or hunting animals
economy	: the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used.

Listening Script

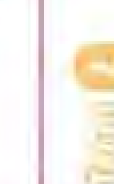


Injy's and Dalia's class presentation.

العرض التقديمي الذي قدمته إنجي وداليا في الفصل.



Injy : Our class presentation is about trade in Ancient Egypt. I'm Injy, and this is Dalia. The Ancient Egyptians bought from and sold many things to different countries. This is called trading. Dalia, can you tell us what kinds of things the Ancient Egyptians traded?



إنجي : عرضنا التقديمي يدور حول التجارة في مصر القديمة. أنا إنجي، وهذه داليا. لقد اشترى المصريون القدماء وباعوا أشياء كثيرة إلى بلدان مختلفة. وهذا ما يسمى بالتجارة. داليا، هل يمكنك أن تخبرينا ما هي أنواع الأشياء التي كان يتاجر بها المصريون القدماء؟

Dalia : Thanks, Injy. Well, one of the most interesting things they traded with other countries was metal! The Ancient Egyptians first found metal in rocks around 7,000 years ago. They heated the rocks and took out the metal parts. They learned that metal was harder than stone, and that they could melt and make different shapes with it.


داليا : شكرًا يا إنجي. حسنًا، أحد أهم الأشياء التي تاجروا فيها مع الدول الأخرى هو المعدن! عثر المصريون القدماء لأول مرة على المعدن في الصخور منذ حوالي 7000 عام. لقد كانوا يقومون بتسخين الصخور وإخراج الأجزاء المعدنية منها. وعرفوا أن المعدن أكثر صلابة من الحجر، وأنهم يستطيعون صهره وصنع أشكال مختلفة به.

Injy : That's fascinating, Dalia. Thank you. What did they use the metal for?


إنجي : هذا رائع يا داليا. شكرًا لك. فيمَ كانوا يستخدمون المعدن؟

Dalia : They used it to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow things like food more easily. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and decorations. Silver was also used, but it was rarer. As art and culture were very important to the Ancient Egyptians, many of their craftsmen used different types of metal to make statues and sculptures to sell.

داليا : لقد كانوا يستخدمونه لصنع الأدوات والأسلحة، حتى يتمكنوا من الصيد على الأرض، وزراعة أشياء مثل الطعام بسهولة أكبر. كان الذهب معدنًا شائعًا في صُنع المجوهرات والديكورات. كما استُخدِمَت الفضة أيضًا، لكنها كانت نادرة. وبما أن الفن والثقافة كانا في غاية الأهمية بالنسبة للمصريين القدماء، فقد استخدم العديد من حرفييهم أنواعًا مختلفة من المعادن لصنع التماثيل والمنحوتات لبيعها.

Injy : That's right. But they didn't just sell metal to other countries. They also bought some metals, like silver, which they got through trade with countries. And as they traded more, this helped the Ancient Egyptians develop their economy, until Ancient Egypt was one of the strongest economies in the world.

إنجي : هذا صحيح، لكنهم لم يبيعوا المعادن إلى بلدان أخرى فحسب، بل قاموا بشراء بعض المعادن، مثل الفضة، التي كانوا يحصلون عليها عن طريق التجارة مع الدول. وكلما كانوا يزيدون في التجارة، كان ذلك يساعد قدماء المصريين على تطوير اقتصادهم، حتى أصبحت مصر القديمة من أقوى الاقتصادات في العالم.

Dalia : Yes, you only need to look at the Ancient Egyptian artifacts in museums today to see that this is true.

داليا : نعم، ما عليكم سوى النظر إلى القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة الموجودة في المتاحف في وقتنا الراهن لمعرفة مدى صحة ذلك.

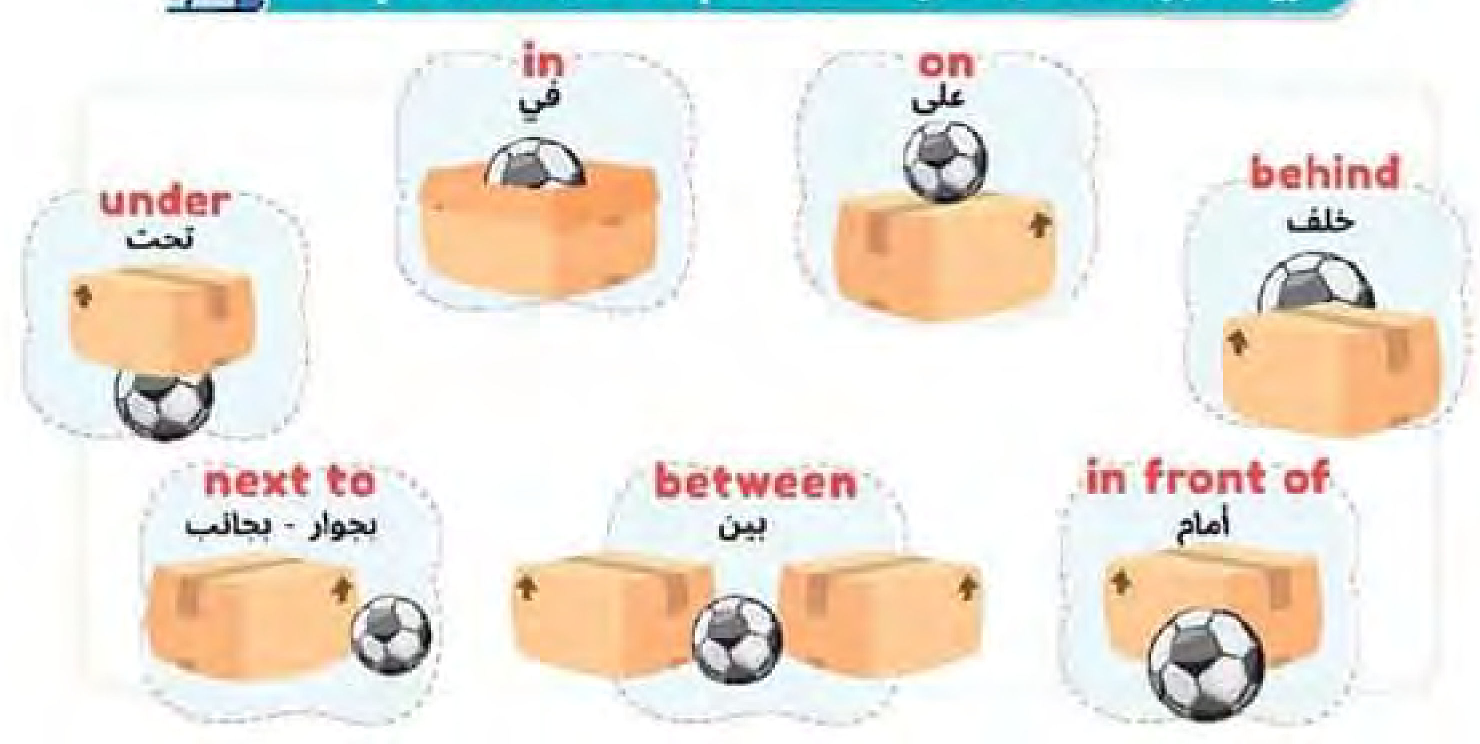
Injy : Well, that's the end of our presentation. Does anyone have any questions, please?

إنجي : حسنًا، هذه نهاية عرضنا التقديمي. هل لدى أحد أي أسئلة من فضلكم؟

GRAMMAR STUDY



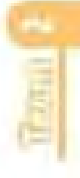
Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

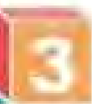


■ **We use prepositions of place to say where things are:**

■ نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنعبر عن مكان وجود الأشياء:

- The Ancient Egyptians first found metal in the rocks thousands of years ago.
- They could hunt and grow things on the land.



Exercises on Lesson  Part (1)



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

jewelry – rarer – traded – countries – weapons

The Ancient Egyptians ① .... with other countries, and metal was one of the most interesting things they traded. They first found metal in rocks. Metal was harder than stone, and they could melt and form it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and ② .... , so that they could hunt on the land, and grow food. Gold was a popular metal for making ③ .... and art to sell. Silver was also used, but it was ④ .... Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to improve.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



between - in - on - Under - in front

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found ① .... his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines ② .... gold lines. ③ .... his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake ④ .... the top of his head.

3 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. (Trade - Culture - System) means buying and selling things between countries.
2. (Wood - Metal - Glass) is something, like gold or iron that is hard and strong.
3. A/An (trade - weapon - economy) is an object used for fighting or hunting animals.
4. (Country - Glass - Economy) means the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used.



5. They used metal to make tools and (jewelry - weapons - shapes), so that they could hunt on the land.
6. (Trade - Decoration - Culture) with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to improve.
7. Gold and (iron - silver - stone) are rare metals.
8. (Craftsmen - Guides - Farmers) are people who make good tools with their hands.

4 Choose the correct answer: (Prepositions of place)

1. The teacher's desk is (between - next - front) the board and the plant.
2. The Ancient Egyptians first found metal (in - front - next) the ground.
3. The library is (next - under - behind) to the computer room.
4. The apple is (front - between - next) the two boxes.
5. The book is (on - at - in) front of the box.
6. The mask is gold, with blue lines (front - between - next) gold lines.
7. There is a snake (on - to - of) the top of his head.
8. The whiteboard is (front - under - between) the clock.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My classroom is .... (front) to the library.
2. The book is .... (next) the two boxes.
3. It's in .... (between) of the box.
4. Tutankhamun's mask was found .... (up) his tomb.
5. The mask is gold, with blue lines .... (front) gold lines.
6. There is a snake .... (of) the top of his head.
7. The Ancient Egyptians first found metal .... (of) the rocks thousands of years ago.
8. The Ancient Egyptians .... (find) metal around 7000 years ago.

9. What did the Ancient Egyptians .... (found) around 7000 years ago?

10. The Ancient Egyptians .... (trade) with other countries.



6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. was - Metal - harder - rocks - than.

▶ ....

2. eraser - the - is - Where?

▶ .... ?

3. is - The library - next to - room - the computer.

▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. the ancient egyptians found metal around 7000 years ago

▶ ....

2. tutankhamun's mask was found in his tomb

▶ ....

3. where is the eraser

▶ ....

Lesson 3 King Midas and the golden touch

Part 2



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



wish (n) (v) أمنية - يتمنى



daughter ابنة



tears دموع



reward مكافأة



trip over يتعثّر - يتعرقل



hug يحتضن - يعانق



golden touch لمسة ذهبية



rose garden حديقة الورود

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

gemstone	حجر كريم	castle	قلعة
gold	ذهب	human	إنسان - بشري
material things	أشياء مادية	celebrate	يحتفل

Adjectives صفات

precious	ثمين - قيِّم	kind	عطوف
delicious	لذيذ	unkind	قاسٍ - غير عطوف
sick	مريض	true	حقيقي
sad	حزين	rich	غني
warm	دافئ	special	خاص - مميز

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

strange-looking goat	عنزة غريبة المظهر	come true	تتحقق
on the ground	على الأرض	care about	يهتم بـ
turned into (to) gold	تحولت إلى ذهب	into the garden	في الحديقة
more than anything else	أكثر من أي شيء آخر	at the end of ...	في نهاية ...

Pronunciation

The /er/ sound

bear	دُب	hair	شَعر
there	هناك	share	يشارك
air	هواء	pear	كمثرى
rare	نادر	tear	يمزق
wear	يرتدي	pair	زوج

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
wish	يتمنى	wished	wished
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
hug	يحتضن - يعانق	hugged	hugged
trip	يتعثّر	tripped	tripped
turn into	يتحول إلى	turned into	turned into
look	تبدو	looked	looked
walk	يمشي	walked	walked
save	ينقذ	saved	saved
care	يهتم	cared	cared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
spend	يقضي	spent	spent
give	يعطي	gave	given
take	يأخذ	took	taken
leave	يترك	left	left
say	يقول	said	said
lose	يفقد - يخسر	lost	lost



Read and learn

King Midas and the golden touch
الملك ميداس واللمسة الذهبية

Many years ago, there lived a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his daughter, Marigold, his rose garden, and gold. His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at all the gold in his castle.



قبل سنوات عديدة، كان هناك ملك يُدعى الملك ميداس. لقد أحبَّ ثلاثة أشياء أكثر من أي شيء آخر: ابنته ماريجولد، وحديقة الورود الخاصة به، والذهب. كان الشيء المفضل لديه هو قضاء الوقت في حديقته مع ماريجولد. لكنه كان يحب أيضًا النَّظَر إلى كل الذهب الموجود في قلعته.

One night, he was walking in his garden when he **tripped over** something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and a warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better.

في إحدى الليالي، كان يمشي في حديقته فتعثَّر بشيء ما على الأرض. لقد كانت عنزة غريبة المظهر. بَدَت العنزة مريضة جدا. كان الملك ميداس رجلاً طيبًا، لذا أخذ العنزة إلى قلعته. وهناك قدم لها طعامًا وسريرًا دافئًا. في الصباح، شعرت العنزة بتحسن كبير.

"I would like to thank you, King Midas," said the goat. "What would you like more than anything else in the world?"

قالت العنزة: «أود أن أشكرك أيها الملك ميداس. ما الذي تريده أكثر من أي شيء آخر في العالم؟»

King Midas thought for a minute, then said, "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold."

فكر الملك ميداس لوهلة، ثم قال: «أود أن يتحول كل شيء ألمسه إلى ذهب.»

"OK," said the goat, and made the king's wish come true.

قالت العنزة: «حسنًا»، وحققت أمنية الملك.

King Midas was very excited. After the goat left, he walked around the castle. When he touched a chair, it turned to gold. When he touched his bed, it turned to gold, too. To celebrate, he asked for a special meal. But when he touched the food, he couldn't eat it because it turned to gold. Then, he went outside into the garden to find Marigold. When he hugged her, she also turned to gold!

كان الملك ميداس متحمسًا جدًا. بعد أن غادرت العنزة، تجوّل في القلعة. وعندما لمس كرسي، تحوّل إلى ذهب. وعندما لمس سريره، تحوّل إلى ذهب أيضًا. واحتفالًا بهذا، طلب وجبة خاصة. ولكنه عندما لمس الطعام لم يستطع أن يأكله لأنه تحوّل إلى ذهب. ثم ذهب إلى الخارج إلى الحديقة ليجد ماريجولد. وعندما عانقها تحوّلت هي الأخرى إلى ذهب!

King Midas started crying. "Please come back, goat!" he said. "I can't lose Marigold."

بدأ الملك ميداس في البكاء. وقال: «أرجوكِ عودي أيتها العنزة! لا أستطيع أن أفقد ماريجولد.»

His tears fell on his precious roses and they turned to gold. But he didn't care about roses or gold any more – he just wanted to save his daughter.

سقطت دموعه على وروده العزيزة فتحوّلت إلى ذهب. لكنه لم يعد يهتم بالورود أو الذهب، بل أراد فقط إنقاذ ابنته.

The goat heard King Midas and returned to change everything back to how it was before.

سمعت العنزة الملك ميداس وعادت لتغيير كل شيء إلى ما كان عليه من قبل.

"Thank you so much!" said King Midas. "I will never think gold is so important again!"

قال الملك ميداس: «شكراً جزيلًا لكِ! لن أعتقد أبدًا مرة أخرى أن الذهب مهم لهذه الدرجة!»

Exercises on Lesson 3 Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. That gemstone is very (rare - pair) – it's not easy to find.
2. I like walking in the fresh (air - hair).
3. This (pair - pear) looks delicious.



4. Don't pull that poster – you'll (tear - share) it!
5. There's a (pair - bear) of brown shoes.
6. What do you want to (wear - where) today?
7. The (bear - pear) is a dangerous animal.
8. I (share - wear) a bedroom with my sister. It's our room.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

castle – king – daughter – spend – rose

Many years ago, there lived a ① .... called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his ② ...., Marigold, his ③ .... garden, and gold. His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at all the gold in his ④ ....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Many years ago, there .... (live) a king called King Midas.
2. What did King Midas .... (wished) for?
3. What do you .... (wanted) to wear today?
4. King Midas .... (were) a kind man. He had a good heart.
5. There .... (are) a pair of brown shoes in the store yesterday.
6. I .... (likes) walking in the fresh air.
7. This pear .... (look) delicious.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. man - a kind - was - King Midas.
▶ ....
2. walking - like - I - air - the fresh - in.
▶ ....
3. do - What - want - you - today - to wear?
▶ .... ?
4. delicious - looks - pear - This.
▶ ....
5. King Midas - did - What - wish - for?
▶ .... ?

Lessons 4 5 Writing: A fact file & Project



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس




meteorites
نيازك - أحجار نيزكية



dagger
خنجر



display boards
لوحات العرض



precious
ثمين - قيّم



mine (v)(n)
يُعدِّن - يستخرج - منجم



iron
حديد



copper
نحاس



bronze
برونز

Project



scarab amulet
تميمة الجعران (الخنفساء)



gallery
معرض



good fortune
حظ سعيد



image
صورة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

fact file	ملف حقائق	items	أغراض
metal of heaven	معدن السماء	agricultural tools	أدوات زراعية
silver mine	منجم فضة	mirrors	مرايا
sheet silver	طبقة (غطاء) من الفضة	salts	أملاح



Prepositions حروف الجر

early on	في مرحلة مبكرة	**the result of**	نتيجة لـ
later on	فيما بعد	**come from**	يأتي من

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
appear	يظهر	appeared	appeared
work	يعمل	worked	worked
melt	ينصهر	melted	melted
start	يبدأ	started	started
believe	يؤمن	believed	believed
decorate	يُزَيِّن	decorated	decorated
improve	يُحَسِّن	improved	improved
mine	يُعَدِّن - يستخرج	mined	mined

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
bring	يجلب - يحضر	brought	brought
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
get	يحصل على	got	got





Read and learn

Iron in Ancient Egypt

When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?

متى بدأ المصريون القدماء في استخدام الحديد؟

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze.

بدأ المصريون القدماء في استخدام الحديد منذ أكثر من 5000 عام. قبل الحديد، كانوا يستخدمون النحاس والبرونز.



Where did they find iron?

أين وجدوا الحديد؟

Amazingly, some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible.



من المثير للدهشة أن بعض الحديد الأول الذي كانوا يستخدمونه كان من الأحجار النيزكية. صنع الحرفيون المصريون القدماء خنجرا شهيرا لمقبرة توت عنخ آمون من حجر نيزكي. كما قاموا باستخراج الحديد من الأرض، لكنهم وجدوا أنه من الصعب جدا استخدامه لأنه يحتاج إلى نار حرارتها كبيرة جدا حتى ينصهر، وهو ما لم يكن ممكنًا في كثير من الأحيان.

Why did they think iron was special?

لماذا اعتقدوا أن الحديد كان مميزًا؟

They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky (because of the meteorites). They called it "the metal of heaven". For them, iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.

لقد اعتقدوا أن الحديد مميز لأنهم ظنوا أنه يأتي من السماء (بسبب النيازك). وأطلقوا عليه اسم «معدن السماء». بالنسبة لهم، كان الحديد أثمن من الذهب لأنه كان أكثر ندرة.



What did they use iron for?

فيمَ استخدموا الحديد؟

Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later on, iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries.

في البداية، استخدم المصريون القدماء الحديد في صناعة الأشياء الصغيرة مثل المجوهرات. وكان النحاس والبرونز من المعادن الشائعة في صنع الأدوات لأنه كان من السهل العثور عليهما. ولكن فيما بعد، بدأت تظهر الأدوات الزراعية والأسلحة الحديدية. وكان هذا نتيجة لحصول المصريين القدماء على المزيد من الحديد من خلال التجارة مع الدول الأخرى.

Project

Scarab Amulet
Egypt

تميمة الجعران
مصر

This scarab amulet is from Ancient Egypt and is more than three thousand years old. It is made of copper.

People wore jewelry with the image of a scarab to protect them and bring them good fortune.

تميمة الجعران هذه من مصر القديمة ويبلغ عمرها أكثر من ثلاثة آلاف عام. وهي مصنوعة من النحاس.

كان الناس يرتدون مجوهرات على شكل جعران لتحميهم ولتجلب الحظ السعيد لهم.



Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

iron - mined - tomb - craftsmen - meteorites

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Amazingly, some of their early iron was from ① .... Ancient Egyptian ② .... made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's ③ .... from a meteorite. They also ④ .... iron from the ground.

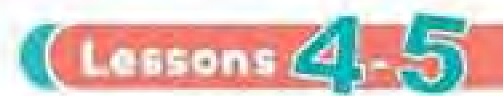
2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

heaven - rarer - meteorites - precious - copper

Before iron, Ancient Egyptians worked with ① .... and bronze. They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky (because of the meteorites). They called it "the metal of ② ....". For them, iron was more ③ .... than gold because it was ④ ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze. Amazingly, some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible. For them, iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.



A Choose the correct answer:

1. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous (statue - dagger - meteorite) for Tutankhamun's tomb.
2. The Ancient Egyptians used a lot of metals like iron, (copper - wood - plastic) and bronze.
3. The underlined word "precious" means (difficult - expensive - cheap).

B Answer these questions:

4. When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?
   ▶ ....
5. Why did the Ancient Egyptian craftsmen find iron difficult to use?
   ▶ ....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. When did the Ancient Egyptians .... (started) using iron?
2. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen .... (make) a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite.
3. Copper and bronze .... (was) common metals for tools because they were easier to find.
4. Where did they .... (found) iron?
5. Why .... (were) iron difficult to work with in the past?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. weren't - There - silver - many - in Egypt - mines.
   ▶ ....
2. did - What - use - they - for - iron?
   ▶ .... ?
3. worked with - Egyptians - Ancient - and bronze - copper.
   ▶ ....
4. silver - the - find - they - did - Where?
   ▶ .... ?



(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)



1 Read and complete the dialogue: (10Ms)

durable - fascinating - preserve - artifacts - granite

Tamara : We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.

Mr Tarek : Great! What would you like to know?

Tamara : Well, first of all, why do we have so many ① ....?

Mr Tarek : We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to ② .... them.

Tamer : What material did the Ancient Egyptians build the Pyramids with?

Mr Tarek : They built the Pyramids with ③ ...., a very hard and ④ .... stone.

Tamer : That's ⑤ ....!

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (10Ms)

1. granite - glass - clay - climate
2. mice - pets - pests - rats
3. durable - valuable - preserve - precious
4. between - trip - behind - under
5. stone - silver - gold - copper

3 Choose the correct answer: (10Ms)

1. The artifacts in the museum were (fascinating - dangerous - hard). We liked them.
2. Egypt has a hot, dry (climate - pollution - mountain) that helped to preserve the artifacts.
3. Most children (dislike - adore - hate) chocolate. They love it very much.

4. People (mummify - damage - preserve) food in the fridge.

5. The (dagger - mine - amulet) is an object used for fighting or hunting animals

6. They (go - went - gone) to the park last weekend.

7. The zoo is (next - under - behind) to the university.

8. I didn't (grow - growing - grew) up in Alexandria.

9. Horses (was - were - is) important for traveling in the past.

10. My house is (front - between - next) the hotel and the supermarket.

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

Many years ago, there lived a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his daughter, Marigold, his rose garden, and gold. His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at all the gold in his castle. One night, he was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and a warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better.

A Answer these questions:

1. When did King Midas live?

▶ ....

2. What did King Midas love?

▶ ....

3. What was King Midas's favorite thing?

▶ ....

B Choose the correct answer:

4. The goat looked very (well - good - sick).

5. King Midas lived in a (castle - palace - house).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (10Ms)

1. mask - Tutankhamun's - was found - his tomb - in.

▶ ....

2. to - is - next - the board - The calendar.

▶ ....

3. metal - used - They - to make - and weapons - tools.

▶ ....

4. still - popular - in Egypt - Cats - pets - are.

▶ ....

5. did - the Ancient - What - Egyptians - silver for - use?

▶ .... ?

6 Write an email to your friend Tamer: (10Ms)

Tell him about the materials like silver, gold, copper, bronze, iron, clay and stone that the Ancient Egyptians used and what they used them for. Your email address is mazen@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is tamer@school.net.

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....



Test 2 on Unit 7



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. Fady is in grade (five - four - six - seven).
2. He went to the (zoo - museum - club - park) last week.
3. Fady met a (tourist - teacher - student - guide) in the museum.
4. A lot of the artifacts are made of (gold - iron - copper - bronze).

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. The (museum - statue - tomb - tool) of Ramsis stood in the middle of Cairo for a long time in Ramsis Square.
2. (Clay - Iron - Copper - Glass) from the River Nile is perfect to make pots.
3. (Trade - Goods - Jewelry - Economy) means the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used.
4. To (mummify - adore - decorate - improve) means to cover in oils and clothes to preserve for a very long time.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

rocks - economy - Ancient - rarer - Gold

In ① .... Egypt, they used lots of metals. ② .... was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell. Silver was also used, but it was ③ .... Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptians ④ .... to improve.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

From ancient times to the present, the Egyptians have carried out great works of building, medicine and engineering. There are many ancient and modern wonderful examples of them. If we go back in history, we will find

that the Ancient Egyptians were great builders. The Pyramids in Giza, the Abu Simbel Temple in Aswan, the Valley of the Kings in Luxor and many others all over Egypt show their great skill.

In our modern times, we have the High Dam in Aswan. The Cairo Tower, the Cairo Stadium and the underground metro are also modern examples.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Abu Simbel is the name of a (museum - temple - valley - statue).
2. The High Dam is in (Luxor - Aswan - Giza - Cairo).
3. The Cairo Tower is a (modern - ancient - low - old) building.

B Answer these questions:

4. What does the underlined word "their" refer to? ▶ ....
5. What are the modern wonderful buildings in Egypt? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. King - did - What - wish for - Midas? ▶ .... ?
2. books - are - on - The - shelves - the. ▶ ....
3. the Ancient - keep - Egyptians - Did - as pets - birds? ▶ .... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2Ms)

1. The Ancient Egyptians .... (make) many artifacts.
2. The chair is in .... (between) of the desk.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- what tools did the ancient egyptians use ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"Keeping pets in Ancient Egypt and now"

▶ Ideas to help you:

cat - dog - monkey - ibis - falcon - turtle - fish - birds





Unit 8 Toys and Games

دُمي و ألعاب

In this unit I will ....

- listen, read, discuss, and write about games, toys, and activities.
- listen to and read a dialog about old toys and games.
- use verb intensifiers.
- listen to and understand a story about a toy.
- use verbs that are followed by -ing.
- spell and say words containing gh or ght.
- use pie charts and bar graphs.
- write a description of your favorite game.
- design and make a simple board game.

Objectives

Vocabulary	**Childhood toys and games:** action figure, board game, cuddly toy, doll's house, hide and seek, hopscotch, marbles, rollerblades, skateboard, skipping, train set.
Language	**Using intensifiers** to give a stronger meaning to other words and phrases. **Verbs + -ing:** I just **enjoy** look**ing** at the market stalls. I **stopped** play**ing** with my train set.
Reading	- A dialog about childhood toys - A story about a toy stall - A project about video games
Listening	- A dialog about childhood games
Speaking	- Talking about favorite childhood toys - Asking and answering questions about childhood games
Writing	- Writing a description of a favorite childhood toy - Writing a project about a favorite video or board game
Project	- Design and make a board game
Pronunciation	Silent (gh) and /f/
Values	Understanding the value of play to social and emotional well-being
Issues and challenges	**Math:** Using graphs

Lesson  1 A box of toys



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



doll's house
بيت الدمية

train set
مجموعة لعبة القطار



action figure
لعبة شخصية متحركة



marbles
كرات زجاجية صغيرة (بلي)



board game
لعبة لوحية

cuddly toy
لعبة محبوبة

rollerblades
حذاء به عجلات للتزحلق



skateboard
لوح تزلج



have a go
يجرب



make up
يخترع - يبتكر



beat
يهزم

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

box of toys	صندوق الألعاب	**brilliant**	رائع
game	لعبة	**cool**	لطيف
actually	في الحقيقة	**successful**	ناجح
though	بالرغم من ذلك	**later**	فيما بعد

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	after a while	بعد فترة من الوقت
look for	يبحث عن	very often	معظم الأحيان
we both	كِلانا	when you were young	عندما كنت صغيرًا

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
visit	يزور	visited	visited
love	يحب	loved	loved
play	يلعب	played	played
want	يريد	wanted	wanted
try	يحاول	tried	tried
invent	يخترع	invented	invented

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
find	يجد	found	found
have	يملك	had	had
am-is-are	يكون	was/were	been
go	يذهب	went	gone
know	يعرف	knew	known
think	يعتقد	thought	thought

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

beat	: be more successful than someone in a game
have a go	: try something
made up	: thought of or invented

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

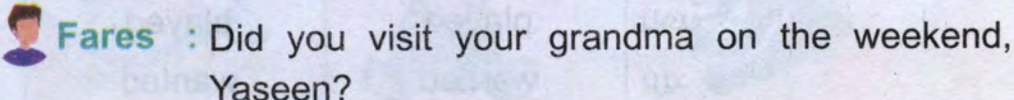
Playing is good for us in lots of different ways. When we play, we feel happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends.

اللعب مفيد لنا بعدة طرق مختلفة.فعندما نلعب، نشعر بالسعادة و نتعرف أيضًا على العالم وأنفسنا. عندما نلعب نتعلم حل المشكلات ونكون صداقات.





Read and learn



A box of toys صندوق الألعاب

Fares : Did you visit your grandma on the weekend, Yaseen?

فارس : هل زرت جدتك في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع يا ياسين؟

Yaseen: Yes, I did. I found a box of my old toys at her house, actually.

ياسين : نعم، لقد زرتها. في الواقع لقد وجدتُ صندوقًا يحتوي على ألعابي القديمة في منزلها.

Adam : What did you find in there?

آدم : ماذا وجدتَ فيه؟

Yaseen: There was an action figure. I loved playing with it!

ياسين : وجدتُ فيه لعبة شخصية حركية. لقد أحببتُ اللعب بها!

Fares : I loved playing with my old action figures, too! I made up lots of games for them.

فارس : لقد أحببتُ اللعب بشخصياتي الحركية القديمة أيضًا! لقد اخترعتُ الكثير من الألعاب لها.

Adam : When I was younger, my favorite toy was a train set.

آدم : عندما كنت أصغر سناً، كانت لعبتي المفضلة هي لعبة القطار.

Yaseen : I didn't have a train set, but my sister had a big doll's house. We both played with it. I don't know where it is now. I found my old rollerblades, though.

ياسين : لم يكن لدي لعبة قطار، لكن أختي كان لديها بيت دُمية كبير. وكان كلانا يلعب به. لا أعرف أين هو الآن. لكنني وجدتُ زلاجاتي القديمة ذات العجلات.

Adam : Brilliant! Did you have a go on them?

آدم : رائع! هل قمت بركوبها في جولة؟

Yaseen : No, I wanted to, but they were too small.

ياسين : لا، لقد أردتُ ذلك، لكنها كانت صغيرة جدًا.

Fares : I didn't have rollerblades, but I had a skateboard. I could go really fast after a while!

فارس : لم يكن لديّ زلاجات ذات عجل، لكن كان لديّ لوح تزلُج. كنتُ أستطيع الانطلاق بسرعة كبيرة بعد مدة من ركوبي له!

Yaseen : Cool! Did you play board games when you were younger?

ياسين : رائع! هل كنتَ تلعب الألعاب اللوحية عندما كنتَ أصغر سنًّا؟

Fares : Yes, we played board games. I played with my older brother, but he usually beat me!

فارس : نعم، لقد كنا نلعب الألعاب اللوحية. لقد كنتُ ألعب مع أخي الأكبر، لكنه عادة ما كان يهزمني!

Adam : We didn't play board games very often, but we played marbles.

آدم : لم نكن نلعب الألعاب اللوحية كثيرًا، لكننا كنا نلعب بالكرات الزجاجية.

Fares : So did I! I think I'll look for some of my old toys later. I'd love to see my favorite cuddly toy again.

فارس : وأنا كذلك! أعتقد أنني سأبحث عن بعض ألعابي القديمة لاحقًا. أودُّ أن أرى دميتي المحبوبة المفضلة مرة أخرى.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

doll's – game – action – figure – made up

I'm Fares. I visited my grandma on the weekend. I found a box of my old toys at her house. There was an ① .... figure. I loved playing with it! I loved playing with my old action figures, too! I ② .... lots of games for them. I didn't have a train set, but my sister had a big ③ .... house. We both played with it. I don't know where it is now. I also found my board ④ ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rollerblades – marbles – set – a go – have

I'm Adam. When I was younger, my favorite toy was a train ① .... I didn't have a skateboard, but I had ② .... I could go really fast after a while! I still have them. I want to have ③ .... on them, but they are too small. Also I had lots of ④ .... They are made of glass. They are round and colorful.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. To (miss - beat - lose) someone means to be more successful than someone in a game.
2. To (have - make - do) a go means to try something.
3. When you (had - made - did) up something, you thought of or invented it.
4. I made up lots of games for my action (figures - marbles - trains). They are my favorite toys.
5. My favorite toy was a train (sat - set - sit).



6. My sister and I played with a (skateboard's - marble's - doll's) house.
7. My old (rollerblades - toys - figures) are too small for me now. I can't wear them.
8. I could go really fast on my (skateboard - train - cuddly toy).
9. I made (of - in - up) lots of games for my action figures.
10. I played with my older brother, but he usually (miss - beat - lose) me!
11. Did you play (beard - bread - board) games when you were younger?
12. I had a (skateboard - marble - cuddly). I could go really fast after a while!
13. My little sister always takes her favorite (doll's - game's - cuddly) toy to bed.
14. I like making up games for my (option - action - section) figures.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Did you .... (visited) your grandma on the weekend?
2. When I .... (be) younger, my favorite toy was a train set.
3. I didn't .... (had) a train set, but my sister had a big doll's house.
4. I could .... (going) really fast after a while!
5. When you .... (are) younger, what was your favorite toy?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. set - a train - was - toy - My favorite.
▶ ....
2. could go - I - really fast - my skateboard - on.
▶ ....
3. old rollerblades - My - too small - are - now - for me.
▶ ....
4. your grandma - you - the weekend - Did - on - visit?
▶ .... ?

5. My sister - a big - had - house - doll's.

▶ ....

6. have - didn't - I - set - a train.

▶ ....

6 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Jana:

Tell her about your old box of toys. What were your favorite toys? Who played with you? Your email address is rana@gmail.com and your friend's email address is jana@yahoo.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....
....
....

.................,

....

Lesson 2 I was very good at hide and seek

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





skipping
نط الحبل



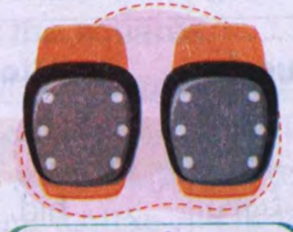
hide and seek
لعبة الغميضة



hopscotch
الحجلة - لعبة القفز



helmet
خوذة



knee pads
واقي الركبة



imagination
خيال

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

fun	متعة	together	معًا - سويًا
stickers	ملصقات	squares	مربعات
colored chalk	طباشير ملون	climbing	تسلق
interesting	ممتع - شيق	running	الجري - العدْو
project	مشروع	hide	يختبئ

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

fall off a skateboard	يسقط من علي لوح التزلج	for a very long time	لوقت طويل جدًا
make up stories	يألف القصص	on your own	بمفردك
good at	جيد في	wear a helmet	يرتدي خوذة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
prefer	يفضل	preferred	preferred
skip	يقفز	skipped	skipped
practice	يمارس- يتدرب	practiced	practiced
look like	يبدو مِثل - يشبه	looked like	looked like
start	يبدأ	started	started

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
hide	يختبئ	hid	hidden
think	يعتقد -يفكر	thought	thought
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
hurt	يؤلم	hurt	hurt
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
fall off	يسقط	fell off	fallen off



Read and learn



Who doesn't like skipping? من الذي لا يحب نط الحبل؟

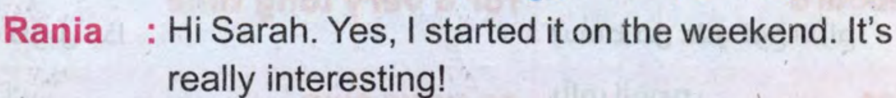




Sarah : Hi Rania, have you started the project about toys and games yet?



سارة : مرحبًا يا رانيا، هل بدأتِ مشروع ألعاب الأطفال والألعاب بعد؟



Rania : Hi Sarah. Yes, I started it on the weekend. It's really interesting!



رانيا : مرحبًا يا سارة. نعم، لقد بدأته في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه مشوّق للغاية!

Sarah : Yes, it is. What games did you like playing when you were younger?

سارة : نعم، إنه كذلك. ما هي الألعاب التي كنتِ تحبين لعبها عندما كنت أصغر؟

Rania : I thought hide and seek was fun. I was very good at hiding!

رانيا : كنتُ أرى أن لعبة الغميضة (الاستغماية) كانت ممتعة. لقد كنتُ جيدة جدًا في الاختباء!

Sarah : I was good at it, too! I could hide for a very long time. I also really liked playing hopscotch with my friends. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares.

سارة : لقد كنتُ أنا أيضًا جيدة فيها! كنتُ أستطيع الاختباء لفترة طويلة جدًا. لقد أحببتُ حقًا لَعِب الحَجلة (القفز على قدمٍ واحدةٍ في مربعات) مع أصدقائي. وكنا نستخدم طباشيرًا بألوان مختلفة لرسم المربعات.

Rania : I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

رانيا : كنتُ أرى أن الحَجلة كانت جيدة جدًا، لكنني كنتُ أُفَضِّل نطّ الحبل.

Sarah : I liked skipping, but I wasn't very good at it. Some skipping games are so difficult!

سارة : كنتُ أُحِبُّ نطّ الحبل، لكنني لم أكن جيدة فيه. بعض ألعاب نطّ الحبل صعبة للغاية!

Rania : Yes, they are. I had to practice a lot with my sister!

رانيا : نعم، إنها كذلك. تحتّم عليّ أن أتدرب كثيرًا مع أختي!

Sarah : Ah, my brother didn't practice with me. He didn't like skipping at all! We often played marbles together, though.

سارة : آه، أخي لم يكن يتدرب معي. لم يكن يحب نطّ الحبل على الإطلاق! لكننا كنا نلعب بالكرات الزجاجية معًا في كثير من الأحيان.

My favorite toy by Youssef لعبتي المفضلة





When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

عندما كنت أصغر سنًا، كانت لعبتي المفضلة هي لوح التزلج الخاص بي. لقد كنتُ أحب الذهاب إلى الحديقة واللعب مع أصدقائي. كان لديهم ألواح تزلج أيضًا، وكان الأمر ممتعًا حقًا. أردنا جميعنا أن ننطلق بسرعة كبيرة! كان لوح التزلج الخاص بي أسود اللون وعليه ملصقات برتقالية وصفراء. كان يتوجّب عليّ ارتداء خوذة ووسادات لحماية ركبتيّ. إنه أمر مؤلم حقًا إذا سقطت من على لوح تزلج! لقد حصلت على لوح التزلج الأول الخاص بي عندما كنت في الثامنة من عمري، وكان صغيرًا جدًا. أنا لا أستخدمه مطلقًا الآن، لأن لدي واحد أكبر.



When Amina was little, she really liked games that used a lot of imagination. She was very good at making up stories. She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.

عندما كانت أمينة صغيرة، كانت تحب الألعاب التي تتطلّب الكثير من الخيال. لقد كانت جيدة جدًا في اختلاق القصص. كان لديها بيت دمية، وبعض الدمى المحبوبة، وبعض الشخصيات الحركية.



Nour really enjoyed playing outside when she was younger. She liked running, climbing, and playing tennis. She was quite good at football, too.

لقد كانت نور تستمتع حقًا باللعب في الخارج عندما كانت أصغر سنًا. لقد كانت تحب الجري والتسلّق ولعب التنس. لقد كانت جيدة جدًا في كرة القدم أيضًا.

GRAMMAR STUDY

Intensifiers عبارات التوكيد

really	حقًا	at all	مطلقًا
very	جدًا	quite	إلى حدٍ ما
so	جدًا		

- We use intensifiers to give a stronger meaning to adjectives and verbs.
- تستخدم عبارات التوكيد لتعطي معنى أقوى للصفات والأفعال.

- We can use (really, very, or so) to strengthen an adjective:
- يمكننا استخدام (really, very, or so) لتعطي معنى أقوى للصفة.

- I was really / very good at hiding!
- Some skipping games are so difficult.

- We can also use (really) to strengthen a verb:
- يمكننا استخدام (really) لتعطي معنى أقوى للفعل.

- I really liked playing hopscotch.

- We can use (at all) to strengthen negative sentences:
- يمكننا استخدام (at all) لتعطي معنى أقوى للجمل المنفية.

- He didn't like skipping at all!

- We can also use (quite) to make the meaning of an adjective less strong:
- يمكننا استخدام (quite) لتجعل معنى الصفة أقل قوة.

- I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.



Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hopscotch – games – seek – hide – skipping

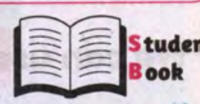
Hi, I'm Rania. I started a project about toys and games on the weekend. It's really interesting! I thought hide and ① .... was fun. I was very good at hiding! I could ② .... for a very long time. I also really liked playing ③ .... with my friends. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares. Some of my friends preferred ④ .... Some skipping games are so difficult!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fall - skateboards - helmet - going - pads

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had ① ...., too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a ② .... on my head and knee ③ .... It really hurts if you ④ .... off a skateboard!

3 Choose the correct answer:



1. I (really - very) liked playing with cuddly toys when I was younger.
2. I thought action figures were (quite - at all) good, but I preferred train sets
3. My brother was (very - at all) good at football. He always beat me!
4. You're (quite - so) good at hide and seek – you always hide in the bes places!
5. This book is not funny (at all - quite).
6. I (really - very) enjoyed playing marbles with my friends.
7. Shaimaa (very - really) enjoys playing marbles.
8. I don't like playing football (at all - quite).

9. I think hopscotch is (quite - all) good, but I prefer hide and seek.
10. I finished (playing - plays) with my doll's house when my sister got home.
11. We imagined (be - being) in a plane over the city.
12. Does he enjoy (reading - reads) adventure books?

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hi! I'm Youssef. When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now because I have a bigger one.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Youssef loved going to the (zoo - park - club) and playing with his friends.
2. If you fall off a skateboard, it really (hurts - laughs - feels)!
3. Youssef had to wear a helmet and (elbow - hand - knee) pads.

B Answer these questions:

4. Why doesn't Youssef use his first skateboard now? ▶ ....
5. What was Youssef's favorite toy? ▶ ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I was .... (at all) good at hiding!
2. I .... (very) liked playing hopscotch.
3. He didn't like skipping .... (quite)!
4. The project is .... (real) interesting!
5. Some skipping games are .... (at all) difficult.
6. I thought hopscotch was .... (quiet) good, but I preferred skipping.

7. I .... (very) enjoyed riding my bike.
8. I .... (real) liked playing hopscotch with my friends.
9. What games did you like .... (played) when you were younger?
10. I was very good at .... (hide)!

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: Student's Book

1. board games - I - like - really - playing. ▶ ....
2. quite - Skateboarding - good - is. ▶ ....
3. football - think - I - so - is - exciting. ▶ ....
4. Nadia - marbles - pretty - very - some - has. ▶ ....
5. didn't - Asser - train sets - at all - like. ▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. nadia really enjoys playing marbles on fridays ▶ ....
2. does he enjoy reading adventure books ▶ ....
3. rania thinks skipping is better than hopscotch ▶ ....
4. when youssef was younger, his favorite toy was his skateboard

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Basma:

Tell her about the games you enjoyed when you were younger and what you were good at. Your email address is hana@school.net and your friend's email address is basma@gmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,

....

....

................,

....

Lesson 3 We loved playing with our train set

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس









stall كشك

store محل - متجر

shopping التسوق







market السوق

sail شِراع

button زِر





trunk خرطوم (زلومة) الفيل

machine ماكينة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

pieces	قطع	**cloth**	قماش
boat	قارب	**large**	كبير الحجم
almost	تقريبًا	**tidy up**	يرتب
lemonade	عصير ليمون	**wheels**	عجلات
a few years ago	منذ سنوات قليلة	**out of wood**	من الخشب

Pronunciation

silent (gh)		(gh) /f/	
through	خلال	laugh	يضحك
bought	اشترى	laughter (n)	ضَحِكْ
drought	جفاف	enough	كافٍ
daughter	ابنة	rough	خشِن - وَعِر
thought	اعتقد	tough	قاسٍ - صعب
brought	أحضر	draughts	لعبة الضامة (لعبة لوحية)
		coughed	كح - سَعَل

Math

graph	رسم بياني	show	يعرض - يبين
bar graph	شريط رسم بياني	How many	كم عدد
pie chart	مخطط دائري	Which	أي - أيهما
information	معلومات	How often	كم مرة - كم عدد المرات

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

always	دائمًا	often	غالبًا
sometimes	أحيانًا	never	أبدًا

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
shop	يتسوق	shopped	shopped
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
work	يعمل	worked	worked

Present		Past	PP
use	يستخدم	used	used
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
paint	يلون	painted	painted
finish	ينهي	finished	finished
stop	يتوقف	stopped	stopped
cough	يكح	coughed	coughed
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed
wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	enjoyed
smile	يبتسم	smiled	smiled
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
push	يضغط-يدفع	pushed	pushed
turn	تدور	turned	turned
reply	يجيب	replied	replied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
show	يعرض	showed	shown
see	يري	saw	seen
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
come	يأتي	came	come
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
say	يقول	said	said
make	يصنع	made	made
fly	يطير	flew	flown
let	يسمح - يدع	let	let
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
bring	يحضر	brought	brought



Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

stall	: a large table that you use to sell things from at a market
button	: what you touch to make a machine work
trunk	: the long nose of an elephant
sail	: strong pieces of cloth that make a boat move

Listening Script

Ali was tired. His parents were shopping at the market. It was a hot day. Ali's feet hurt, and he really wanted to go home.

كان عليّ متعبًا. وكان والديه يتسوقان في السوق. وكان يومًا حارًا. وقدما علي كانتا تؤلمانه، وكان يريد العودة إلى المنزل.

"Are you OK, Ali?" asked Mom. "We've almost finished. We need tomatoes from this stall. Wait here, then I'll get you some lemonade."

سألته والدته: "هل أنت بخير يا علي؟ لقد انتهينا تقريبًا. نريد طماطم من هذا الكشك. انتظر هنا، وسأحضر لك بعض من عصير الليمون."

"Thanks, Mom," said Ali. He waited, and then he saw a stall with toys made from wood and metal. There were boats, trains, and animals. Ali's parents were choosing vegetables, so Ali asked if he could look at the toys.

قال علي: "شكرًا يا أمي." وانتظر، ثم رأى كشكًا به ألعاب مصنوعة من الخشب والمعدن. كان بالكشك قوارب وقطارات وحيوانات. كان والدا علي يختاران الخضراوات، لذلك سألهما علي إذا كان بإمكانه إلقاء نظرة على الألعاب.

"OK", said Dad. "But we aren't buying toys today!"

قال والده: "حسنا، لكننا لن نشتري ألعابًا اليوم!"

"That's OK," said Ali. "I enjoy looking."

قال علي: "لا بأس. أنا أستمتع بالنظر إليها."

An old man was sitting behind the stall, making a small cat out of wood. He saw Ali looking at the toys and smiled.

كان هناك رجل عجوز يجلس خلف الكشك، يصنع قطة صغيرة من الخشب. ورأى العجوز عليًا ينظر إلى الألعاب وابتسم.

The man picked up a train. "Look at this", he said. He pushed a button under the train, and the wheels turned. When he put it down on the stall, it started to move.

أمسك الرجل قطارًا، وقال "انظر إلى هذا." وضغط على زر تحت القطار، فدارت العجلات. وعندما وضعه على الكشك، بدأ يتحرك.

"Do you like trains?" he asked.

فسأل الرجل: "هل تحب القطارات؟"

"I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago," Ali replied. "But this is brilliant."

فأجاب عليّ قائلًا: "لقد توقفت عن اللعب بلعبة القطار الخاصة بي منذ بضع سنوات. لكن هذا رائع."

Ali looked at the train again. It was small, but very beautiful. The other toys on the stall were amazing, too. There was an elephant which moved its trunk. There was a boat with beautiful cloth sails.

نظر علي إلى القطار مرة أخرى. لقد كان صغيرًا ولكنه كان جميلًا جدًا. وكانت الألعاب الأخرى الموجودة في الكشك رائعة أيضًا. كان هناك فيل يُحَرِّك خرطومه. وكان هناك قارب بأشرعة جميلة من القماش.

Ali's dad came to see. "Wow! My brother and I had a train like this when I was a child!" he said. "We loved playing with our train set."

جاء والد علي ليرى. وقال: "واو! أنا وأخي كان لدينا قطار مثل هذا عندما كنت طفلًا! لقد أحببنا اللعب بلعبة القطار الخاصة بنا."

He picked up the train, smiling. "I'll take it!" said Dad.

أمسك الأب القطار وهو يبتسم، وقال: "سوف آخذه!"

Ali laughed. "I thought you said we weren't buying toys today, Dad!" Dad laughed, "You can play with it, too!"

ضحك علي، "اعتقدت أنك قلت إننا لن نشتري ألعابًا اليوم يا أبي!" فضحك الأب، "يمكنك اللعب به أنت أيضًا!"

GRAMMAR STUDY

The gerund (verb + ing)

الأفعال الآتية تتبع بـ- (verb + ing).

finish	ينهي	stop	يتوقف
imagine	يتخيل	continue	يستمر
enjoy	يستمتع	like	يحب
prefer	يُفضِل	hate	يكره

- I finished playing with my doll's house when my sister got home.
- We imagined being in a plane over the city.
- Does he enjoy reading adventure books?
- I enjoy looking at the market stalls.
- I stopped playing with train set a few years ago.

Enrich your knowledge أضف إلى معلوماتك

- بعض الأفعال يمكن أن تتبع بـ (to + المصدر) وأيضًا يمكن أن تتبع بـ (verb + ing) مع وجود تغيير في المعنى.

- My dad stopped buying newspapers.
- هذه الجملة تعني أن أبي توقف عن شراء الصحف.
- My dad stopped to buy a newspaper.
- هذه الجملة تعني أن أبي توقف لكي يشتري صحيفة.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

market – toys – shopping – amazing – stall

Ali was ① .... with his parents at the ② .... He saw a ③ .... that sold toys. A man showed him how a train moved. Ali thought the toys were amazing. Ali's dad came to see the ④ ...., too. He liked the train, so he bought it.

2 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. A (store - stall - sail) is a large table that you use to sell things from at a market.
2. A (bottom - bullet - button) is what you touch to make a machine work.
3. A (tail - trunk - branch) is the long nose of an elephant.
4. A (sail - snail - sale) refers to strong pieces of cloth that make a boat move.
5. There are some wooden toys on the toy (sail - stall - soil).
6. Press the green (button - bullet - bottom) to make the machine work.
7. A (drought - laughter - draught) is when there isn't enough rain.
8. We (cry - laugh - fly) when we hear or read something funny.
9. My uncle has two (dads - daughters - moms) and a son.
10. (Where - What - How often) do you go to the club?
    ▶ I always go to the club.

3 Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. I finished (playing - plays - played) with my doll's house when my sister got home.



2. We imagined (be - been - being) in a plane over the city. SB

3. Does he enjoy (reading - reads - to read) adventure books? SB

4. Hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred (skip - skipping - to skipping).

5. I stopped (playing - play - plays) with my train set a few years ago.

6. She liked (to run - ran - running), climbing and playing tennis.

7. I loved (going - goes - gone) to the park.

8. Amal imagined (flying - to fly - fly) in a plane.

9. I enjoy (to look - look - looking) at the market stalls.

10. I liked (skipped - skip - skipping), but I wasn't very good at it.

11. Younis hates (played - plays - playing) tennis.

12. They continued (show - showing - showed) us lots of interesting things.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Ghada prefers .... (play) board games to skipping. SB

2. We enjoy .... (make up) stories for our action figures. SB

3. My sister stopped .... (let) me share her doll's house because I broke it. SB

4. They finished .... (paint) the posters and tidied up. SB

5. She imagined .... (fly) in a plane.

6. She liked .... (ran), climbing, and playing tennis.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. enjoy - I - looking at - stalls - the market.

▶ ....

2. posters - the - painting - finished - They.

▶ ....

3. laugh - We - when we - draughts - play.

▶ ....

4. prefer - I - with - playing - toys - new.

▶ ....

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. ali was shopping with his parents

▶ ....

2. did amal imagine flying in a plane

▶ ....

3. on saturday gehan likes playing with her new toys

▶ ....

4. is ghada playing board games

▶ ....



Lessons 4 5 Writing: A description of my favorite game & Project

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





adventure games ألعاب مغامرات



games console وحدة تحكم للألعاب



video games ألعاب ڤيديو



players لاعبين

Project



counters عدادات



board game لعبة لوحية



dice زهر

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

description	وصف	materials	مواد
graphics	رسومات	bricks	طوب
images	صور	kinds	أنواع
rules	قواعد	reason	سبب
opinion	رأي	ideas	أفكار
problem	مشكلة	introduce	يُقدم
cardboard	كرتون - ورق مقوي	however	ومع ذلك
though	بالرغم من أن	although	على الرغم من

Adjectives صفات

creative	مبدع	exciting	مثيرة - مدهشة
modern	حديث	great	عظيم
new	جديد	favorite	مفضل
amazing	مدهش	easy	سهل
difficult	صعب	clear	واضح
different	مختلف	important	هام

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

solve a problem	حل مشكلة
build cities	تبني مدن
every day after school	كل يوم بعد المدرسة
share with	يتشارك مع
once a week	مرة في الأسبوع
an hour a day	ساعة واحدة في اليوم
make a board game	يصنع لعبة لوحية
move around the board	يتحرك حول اللوحة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
share	يشارك	shared	shared
introduce	يُقدِم	introduced	introduced
solve	يحل	solved	solved
design	يصمم	designed	designed

Present		Past	PP
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
change	يُغير	changed	changed
check	يتأكد - يفحص	checked	checked
swap	يتبادل	swapped	swapped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
get	يحصل على	got	got
build	يبني	built	built
go	يذهب	went	gone
beat	يهزم	beat	beaten
choose	يختار	chose	chosen



Read and learn

My favorite video game by Belal
لعبة الڤيديو المفضلة لديَّ



I love playing all kinds of games. I play games outside with my friends, and at school we play hopscotch and board games. I also enjoy playing board games with my sister, although she often beats me!

أحبُّ لَعِب جميع أنواع الألعاب. أنا ألعب ألعابًا في الخارج مع أصدقائي، وفي المدرسة نلعب الحجلة والألعاب اللوحية. كما أستمتع بلعب الألعاب اللوحية مع أختي، على الرغم من أنها غالبًا ما تهزمني!



My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

ألعابي المفضلة هي ألعاب الفيديو. لكنني لا ألعبها كثيرًا رغم ذلك. ألعبها لمدة ساعة تقريبًا في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنها ممتعة! ألعابي المفضلة هي تلك التي تقوم فيها ببناء المدن. لقد بنيتُ مدينة كبيرة حقًا باستخدام قوالب طوب مختلفة. وفيه حيوانات ونباتات أيضًا. أحب هذه الألعاب لأنه تُمَكّنُكَ من أن تكون مبدعًا ومن أن تصنع شيئًا جديدًا.

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult, but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting.

بعض الصور في ألعاب الفيديو الحديثة مذهلة. لقد حصلتُ على وحدة تحكم جديدة للألعاب، وأتشاركها مع أختي. إنها تستمتع بلعب ألعاب المغامرة، حيث يمكنك الذهاب إلى أماكن مختلفة للعثور على شيء مهم أو حل مشكلة. يمكن أن تكون هذه الألعاب صعبة، ولكن أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون ممتعة أيضًا، لأنها مثيرة للغاية.

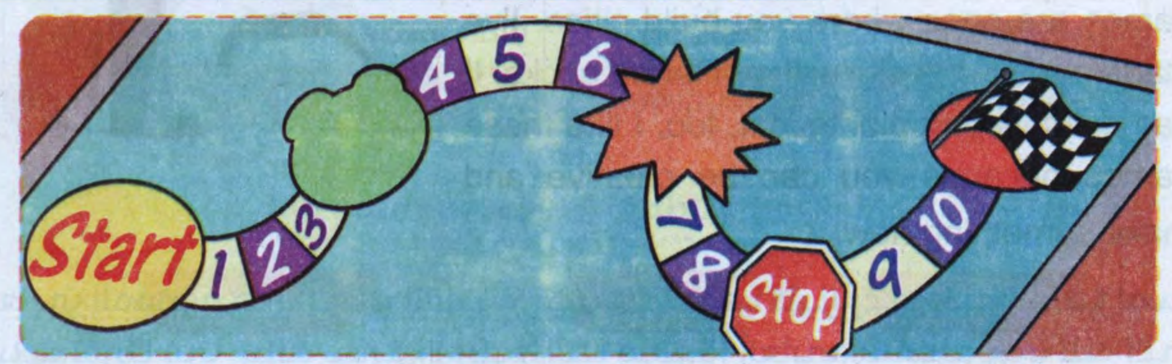
Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

يمكن أن تُشَكّل ألعاب الفيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا. ومع ذلك، أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون رائعة عندما تفعل شيئًا إبداعيًا أو مثيرًا للغاية. يمكنك اللعب مع أصدقائك في كثير من الأحيان أيضًا.

Project

Design and make a board game

صمم واصنع لعبة لوحية



You are going to design and make a board game. First, look at the example above. How does this game work? Then look at some of the other games in this unit for ideas. What other ideas do you have?

Be creative!

سوف تصمم وتصنع لعبة لوحية. أولًا، انظر إلى المثال أعلاه. كيف تعمل هذه اللعبة؟ ثم انظر إلى بعض الألعاب الأخرى في هذه الوحدة بحثًا عن أفكار. ما هي الأفكار الأخرى التي لديك؟ كن مبدعًا!

Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

playing - amazing - solve - console - problem

Video games are my favorite games. Some of the images in modern video games are ① .... I've got a new games ② .... which I share with my sister. She enjoys ③ .... adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or ④ .... a problem. They can be difficult, but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

games - city - weekend - creative - video

My favorite games are ① .... games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the ② .... It's fun! My favorite ③ .... are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be ④ .... and make something new.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hello! I'm Belal. My favorite games are video games. Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult, but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. My sister enjoys playing (building - drawing - adventure) games.
2. Belal has got a new games (mouse - console - keyboard).
3. Belal's favorite games are (video - audio - sound) games.

B Answer these questions:

4. Why does Belal like video games?
▶ ....

5. How long does Belal play video games on the weekend?
▶ ....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. How does this game .... (works)?
2. I love .... (played) all kinds of games.
3. What .... (be) your favorite game?
4. What ideas do you .... (had)?
5. It .... (are) a board game called Ludo.
6. She enjoys .... (plays) adventure games.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. work - game - this - does - How?
▶ .... ?
2. all kinds - love - playing - I - of games.
▶ ....
3. game - favorite - your - What's?
▶ .... ?
4. board - plays - Belal - his sister - with - games.
▶ ....
5. players - many - are - How - there?
▶ .... ?

6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"My favorite game"

▶ Ideas to help you:

- What is it called?
- How do you play it?
- How often do you play it?
- Who do you play with?
- Why do you like it?

....
....
....
....



Test 3 on Unit 8

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)



1 Read and complete the dialogue: (10Ms)

train - rollerblades - have - made - action

Yaseen : I found a box of my old toys at my grandma's house.

Adam : What did you find in there?

Yaseen : There was an ① .... figure. I loved playing with it!

Fares : I loved playing with my old action figures, too! I ② .... up lots of games for them.

Adam : When I was younger, my favorite toy was a ③ .... set.

Yaseen : I didn't have a train set, but I found my old ④ ...., though.

Adam : Brilliant! Did you ⑤ .... a go on them?

Yaseen : No, I wanted to, but they were too small.

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (10Ms)

1. train set - doll's house - made up - action figure
2. skateboard - beat - rollerblades - marbles
3. really - quite - very - although
4. rough - laughter - bought - tough
5. working - solve - buying - shopping

3 Choose the correct answer: (10Ms)

1. There was an action (figure - teddy - doll) in my box of toys.
2. My sister is (cuddly - creative - difficult). She always makes new things.
3. Draughts is a (building - video - board) game.

4. I thought hide and (seek - think - sink) was fun.

5. I've got a new games (console - box - house) to play video games.

6. My friends (really - so - very) liked playing with cuddly toys.

7. What games did you like (playing - played - play) when you were younger?

8. Some skipping games are (to - so - at all) difficult.

9. My brother enjoys (made - making - make) up stories.

10. He didn't prefer skipping (quite - really - at all)!

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms

When Amina was little, she really liked games that used a lot of imagination. She was very good at making up stories. She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.
Her sister Nour really enjoyed playing outside when she was younger. She liked running, climbing and playing tennis. She was quite good at football, too.

A Answer these questions:

1. What games did Amina like when she was little?
▶ ....

2. What games did Amina have?
▶ ....

3. What did Nour like when she was younger?
▶ ....

B Choose the correct answer:

4. Amina was very good at making up (games - toys - stories).

5. Nour was quite good at (football - tennis - basketball).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (10Ms)

1. didn't - play - We - games - board.

▶ ....

2. What - toy - was - favorite - your?

▶ .... ?

3. came - see - to - Ali's dad - toys - the.

▶ ....

4. had - I - rollerblades - a skateboard - and.

▶ ....

5. were - at - you - What - good?

▶ .... ?

6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (10Ms)

"Hide and seek"

▶ Ideas to help you: popular - children - friends - hide - find

....

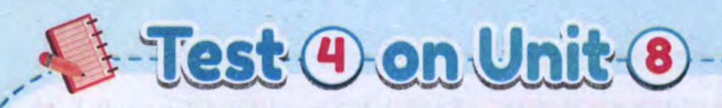
....

....

....

....

....





1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms





1. Ali was (shopping - working - selling - buying) with his parents at the market.
2. Ali saw a stall that sold (bikes - cars - boxes - toys).
3. Ali's (mom - brother - dad - sister) came to see the toys.
4. Ali's dad liked the (train - plane - car - boat), so he bought it.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms

1. I really liked playing (hide and seek - skipping - draughts - hopscotch) with my friends. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares.
2. Did you have a (show - go - draw - graph) on your old rollerblades?
3. I loved playing with my old action figures! I (had - made - beat - did) up lots of games for them.
4. I love playing video games, so I've got a new games (rollerblades - skateboard - console - graphics).

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms

knee - fun - skateboards - playing - hurts

I loved going to the park and ① .... with my friends. We had ② ...., and it was really good times. We all had skateboards, and we wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and ③ .... pads. It really ④ .... if you fall off a skateboard!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms

The first time I went to a football match was three months ago. It was our national team against Morocco. I went with my friends Ali, Alaa and Ehab. We arrived at Cairo Stadium at two o'clock. The big stadium was full of different people. There were about sixty thousand people there. The match started at three. Each team tried to cross the other goal line with the ball. It was an exciting match.

Our players could score three goals. We were all very happy. The match ended at five o'clock, and we all began to leave the stadium.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The game took (two - three - four - five) hours.
2. The match was (boring - annoying - frightening - exciting).
3. We arrived at Cairo Stadium in the (morning - afternoon - evening - night).

B Answer these questions:

4. How many friends went to the stadium? ▶ ....
5. What did each team try to do? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. do - have - What - you - ideas? ▶ .... ?
2. a - plane - flying - imagined - in - Amal. ▶ ....
3. he - Does - reading - enjoy - books - adventure? ▶ .... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2Ms)

1. I .... (very) loved playing with my old action figures.
2. I liked .... (skip), but I wasn't very good at it.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- does heba and aya prefer playing with old toys or new toys ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Tom: (5Ms)

Tell him about yourself, your family, your school and your hobbies. Your email address is adel@gmail.com and your friend's email address is tom@yahoo.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,
....
..................,
....

Unit 9 What's the story?

ما القصة؟

In this unit I will ....

- listen and read about Goha and his stories.
- understand and discuss what makes a good story.
- use the past continuous.
- write the beginning and ending of a short story.
- listen to a short story about a boy and a wolf.
- use sequencing adverbs.
- learn how to say words with the sound /w/.
- take part in a cooperative storytelling project.

Objectives

Vocabulary	**Features of a story:** characters, ending, event, moral, narrator, setting
Language	**Using the past continuous** to say what was happening at a particular time in the past **Adverbs of sequencing:** First, Next, Then, After that, Finally
Reading	- A dialog about Goha's stories - A story about a message in a bottle - **Story:** The Boy Who Cried Wolf
Listening	- A dialog about stories
Speaking	- Role-playing an interview about what happened in a story - Giving feedback about a story beginning
Writing	- Writing the beginning of a story
Project	- Complete a story
Pronunciation	/w/
Life skills	Comprehending and writing stories
Values	Learning from mistakes and being truthful



Lesson 1 Goha's stories

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

Features of a story: عناصر القصة

story	قصة	ending	النهاية
setting	المكان والزمان	moral	مغزى (العبرة من) القصة
characters	الشخصيات	event	حدث
narrator	الراوي	details	تفاصيل

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

review	مقال نقدي	main	أساسي
market	سوق	the countryside	الريف
journey	رحلة	country	بلد - دولة
son	ابن	popular	معروف
differences	اختلافات	the same	متماثل
part	جزء	tired	مجهد - متعب

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

in fact	في الحقيقة	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
take place	يحدث	have a turn	يأخذ دوره
all over the world	حول العالم	So do I.	وكذلك أنا.
must be	لا بد أن يكون	Me, too.	وأنا أيضًا.
he's known by	هو معروف بـ	Goha is right.	جحا على حق.
for example	على سبيل المثال	agree with	يتفق مع

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
pass	يمر	passed	passed
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
want	يريد	wanted	wanted
disagree	يرفض	disagreed	disagreed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
go	يذهب	went	gone
write	يكتب	wrote	written
let	يسمح - يدع	let	let
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
say	يقول	said	said
teach	يدرس	taught	taught
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
tell	يخبر	told	told
take place	يحدث	took place	took place

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

Characters	: the people or animals in a story
Setting	: the time and place where a story happens
Narrator	: the person who tells the story
Ending	: the last part of a story
Moral	: the lesson you learn from a story

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

People have told stories for thousands of years. The Ancient Egyptians carved pictures to tell stories.

لقد روى الناس القصص لآلاف السنين. وقام المصريون القدماء بنحت صور لرواية القصص.





Read and learn



Why do the man and his son carry the donkey?
لماذا يحمل الرجل وابنه الحمار؟




Mom : What are you doing, Lama?

الأم : ماذا تفعلين يا لمى؟

Lama : I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending of the story, they both carry the donkey!

لمى : أنا أكتب مراجعة لإحدى قصص جحا. قصة رجل يذهب إلى السوق مع ابنه وحماره. المكان هو الريف، قبل سنوات عديدة. يتناوب اثنان من الشخصيات – الرجل وابنه – على ركوب الحمار لأنها رحلة طويلة. عندما يركب الصبي الحمار، يقول الناس الذين يمرون به إنه يجب أن يجعل والده يركب بدلًا منه. وعندما يركب الرجل الحمار، يقولون إنه يجب أن يجعل ابنه يركب مكانه. ثم يقولون إنه لا بد أن الحمار مُتعَب. لذا في نهاية القصة، كلاهما يحملان الحمار!



Mom : Haha! His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?

الأم : هاها! قصصه مضحكة وذكية، أليس كذلك؟

Lama : Yes, they are. He's a great narrator, too. I love the details he gives about the characters, the setting, and everything that happens.

لمى : نعم، إنها كذلك. وهو حَكّاء (راوٍ) عظيم أيضًا. أحب التفاصيل التي يقدمها عن الشخصيات والمكان وكل شيء يحدث.

Mom : So do I. In fact, his stories are popular all over the world. But he's known by different names. For example, in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha.

الأم : وأنا أيضًا. في الواقع، تحظى قصصه بشعبية في جميع أنحاء العالم. لكنه معروف بأسماء مختلفة. على سبيل المثال، في السودان، اسمه جاوحا. وفي الجزائر، اسمه جيحا، وفي المغرب جَحَا.

Lama : Are the stories the same in every country?

لمى : هل القصص هي نفسها في كل بلد؟

Mom : There are some differences, but they all have a moral that Goha wants to teach us. What do you think is the moral of this story?

الأم : هناك بعض الاختلافات، لكن يوجد في كل قصة منها عبرة أخلاقية يريد جحا أن يعلمنا إياها. ماذا تعتقدين هي العبرة الأخلاقية من هذه القصة؟

Lama : That you can't make everyone happy.

لمى : أنه لا يمكنك جعل الجميع سعداء.

Mom : I think Goha is right about that!

الأم : أعتقد أن جحا مُحِقّ في ذلك!

Lama : Me, too. I'm happy that I know which story to write about, though!

لمى : وأنا كذلك. لكنني سعيدة لأنني أعرف أيّ قصة سأكتب عنها!

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

setting – ending – story – review – characters

I'm writing a ① .... of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The ② .... is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the ③ .... – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. In the ④ .... of the story, they both carry the donkey!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tired – carry – turn – rides – donkey

Goha, his son and their donkey are going to the market. When the boy ① .... the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the ② ...., they say that he should let his son have a ③ .... Then, they say the donkey must be ④ .... So, in the ending of the story, they both carry the donkey!

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. I really like the (ending - setting - characters) in the story, especially the talking cuddly toy. SB
2. The (moral - ending - setting) of the story about the monkey is that it's good to have fun. SB
3. The (setting - moral - narrator) goes to the park every day. SB
4. The (ending - characters - setting) of the story about the treasure is very interesting. SB
5. (Lessons - Characters - Markets) are the people or animals in a story.
6. The (ending - narrator - setting) is the last part of a story.
7. The (narrator - setting - ending) is the time and place where a story happens.
8. The (character - narrator - moral) is the lesson you learn from a story.

9. The (narrator - ending - character) is the person who tells the story.
10. The (moral - narrator - setting) of the story is a market.
11. There are three main (characters - narrator - moral) in the story.
12. Lama and her mom learned from the (the moral - setting - journey) of the story.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Why did the man and his son .... (carried) the donkey?
2. The Ancient Egyptians .... (carve) pictures to tell stories.
3. Do you like .... (read)?
4. I'm .... (write) a review of one of Goha's stories.
5. The setting .... (are) the countryside.
6. Why .... (are) reading an important activity?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. great - a - He's - narrator. ▶ ....
2. the - both - donkey - carry - They! ▶ .... !
3. Why - an - activity - reading - is - important? ▶ .... ?
4. funny - both - stories - clever - are - His - and. ▶ ....

6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"My favorite story"

▶ Ideas to help you:

What is it? - The setting - The characters - The ending - The moral

....

....

....

....

....

....









Lesson 2 A message in a bottle

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



the beginning البداية



message رسالة



a glass bottle زجاجة زجاجية



surf يركب الأمواج

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

address	عنوان (على الإنترنت)	**grandparents**	الأجداد
suddenly	فجأة	**granddad**	الجد
space	الفضاء	**grandma**	الجدة
weather	الطقس	**notes**	ملاحظات
trash	قمامة	**newspaper**	صحيفة
forest	غابة	**journalist**	صحفي
near	بالقرب من	**interview**	مقابلة (صحفية)
text message	رسالة نصيه	**computer games**	ألعاب الكمبيوتر

Adjectives صفات

quiet	هادئ	**beautiful**	جميل
lovely	لطيف - رائع	**sunny**	مشمس
little	صغير	**a bit scared**	خائف قليلاً

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

walk along the path	يمشي بطول الممر
on the sand	على الرمال
a piece of paper	قطعة من الورق
score a goal	يحرز هدف
on the beach	على الشاطئ
by the sea	بجانب البحر
in the distance	على بُعد
a better idea	فكرة أفضل
back at the house	عند العودة للمنزل
watch a football match	يشاهد مباراة كرة قدم

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
fold	يثني - يطبق	folded	folded
pass	يمر	passed	passed
surf	يركب الأمواج	surfed	surfed
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
answer	يجيب	answered	answered
ask	يسأل	asked	asked
call	يتصل	called	called
wash	يغسل	washed	washed
live	يعيش	lived	lived
arrive	يصل	arrived	arrived

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
grow up	يكبر	grew up	grown up
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
send	يرسل	sent	sent
do	يفعل	did	done
put	يضع	put	put
throw	يرمي	threw	thrown
find	يجد	found	found
give	يعطي	gave	given
come	يأتي	came	come
read	يقرأ	read	read
see	يرى	saw	seen
swim	يسبح	swam	swum



Read and learn



A message in a bottle رسالة في زجاجة

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed, and played games on the sand.

عاش جدًا توم بجوار البحر. وكان الشاطئ الموجود بالقرب من منزلهما هادئًا وجميلًا، وكان يحب الذهاب معهما إلى هناك. لقد كانوا يَسْبَحون ويركبون الأمواج ويلعبون الألعاب على الرمال.

One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. "Look, Granddad," he said. "Let's put it in the trash."

في أحد الأيام، كانوا يسبحون في البحر عندما رأى توم زجاجة زجاجية في الماء. فقال: "انظر يا جدي. لنضعها في سلة القمامة."

"I have a better idea," said Granddad. "Let's write a message in a bottle."

قال الجد: "لديّ فكرة أفضل. دعنا نكتب رسالة في زجاجة."

"What's a message in a bottle?"

"ما هي الرسالة في الزجاجة؟"

"You write a message on a piece of paper, fold the paper, and put it in the bottle, then throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find."

"تكتب رسالة على ورقة، ثم تطويها وتضعها في الزجاجة، ثم ترمي الزجاجة في البحر ليجدها شخصًا آخر."

Back at the house, Granddad washed the glass bottle and gave Tom a pen and a piece of paper. Tom was writing his message when Grandma came in the room.

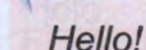
عند عودتهم إلى المنزل، قام الجد بغسل الزجاجة وأعطى توم قلمًا وورقة. كان توم يكتب رسالته عندما دخلت الجدة إلى الغرفة.

"What are you doing, Tom?" asked Grandma.

سألت الجدة: "ماذا تفعل يا توم؟"

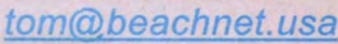
"I'm writing a message in a bottle," answered Tom. "Do you want to read it?"

أجاب توم قائلًا: "أنا أكتب رسالة في زجاجة. هل تريدين قراءتها؟"



Hello!

My name's Tom. I'm 11 years old and I'm from the USA. My favorite things are space, animals, and the color blue. What are your favorite things? Please email back to tell me! My email address is



tom@beachnet.usa

From Tom

مرحبًا!

اسمي توم، وعمري 11 سنة، وأنا من الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. الأشياء المفضلة لديّ هي الفضاء والحيوانات واللون الأزرق. ما هي الأشياء المفضلة لديك؟ من فضلك راسلني على البريد الإلكتروني لتخبرني! عنوان بريدي الإلكتروني هو tom@beachnet.usa

من توم

The next day, Tom and his grandparents went to the beach to throw the bottle into the sea.

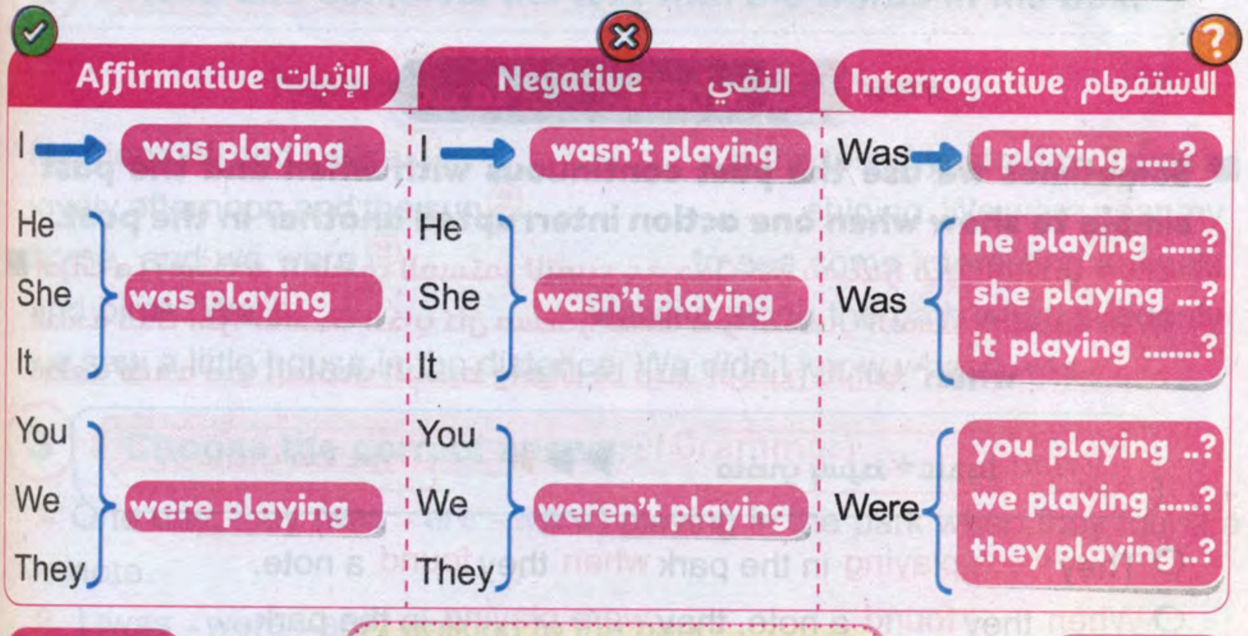
وفي اليوم التالي، ذهب توم وجدّاه إلى الشاطئ لإلقاء الزجاجة في البحر.

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message...

مرت سنوات عديدة، وكبر توم. لقد نسي هو وجدّاه الرسالة في الزجاجة. وفي أحد الأيام، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة...



The past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر



Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I → was playing	I → wasn't playing	Was → I playing .....?
He / She / It → was playing	He / She / It → wasn't playing	Was → he playing .....? / she playing ...? / it playing ....?
You / We / They → were playing	You / We / They → weren't playing	Were → you playing ..? / we playing .....? / they playing ..?

Form: (was – were) + verb + ing يتكون من

- My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday.

- **We use the past continuous in stories to say what was happening at a particular time in the past.**

- نستخدم الماضي المستمر في القصة لنعبر عن ما كان يحدث في وقت معين في الماضي.

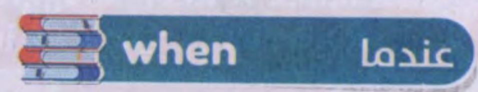
- Yesterday afternoon, John was walking his dog.

- **In the negative form, we use (not) after (was – were).**
- عند النفي نضع (not) بعد (were- was).

- She wasn't watching TV in the morning.

- **In the interrogative form, we use (was - were) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the [verb + ing].**
- عند عمل سؤال، نبدأ السؤال بـ (were - was) أو نضع إحداهما بعد أداة الاستفهام مع (ing + الفعل).

- What were you doing yesterday? ▶ I was doing my homework.
- Were they flying their kites? ▶ No, they weren't.



when عندما

- **Sometimes we use the past continuous with when and the past simple to show when one action interrupted another in the past.**
- أحيانًا ما يُستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في الماضي عندما قطعه حدث آخر. فالحدث الذي كان مستمرًا نضعه في الماضي المستمر والحدث الذي قطعه نضعه في الماضي البسيط وأحيانًا ما نربط الزمنين بالرابط "when"

ماضي مستمر  ماضي بسيط + عندما when

- They were playing in the park when they found a note.
- When they found a note, they were playing in the park.
- فالحدث الذي كان مستمرًا هنا أنهم كانوا يلعبون في المنتزه والحدث الذي قطعه أنهم وجدوا مذكرة.

- I was reading a book when my dad came home.
- When my dad came home, I was reading a book.
- فالحدث الذي كان مستمرًا هنا أنني كنت أقرأ كتابًا والحدث الذي قطعه أن والدي عاد للبيت.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

message – swimming – surfed – swam – beach

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The ① .... near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, ② ...., and played games on the sand. One day, they were ③ .... in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. They put a ④ .... in the bottle, threw it in the sea and waited to see who would find the message.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hoping – forest – playing – was – were

My friend Ali and I were ① .... in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun ② .... shining. We were near my home, and we were ③ .... to see some interesting animals and birds. We ④ .... walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. We didn't know what it was.

3 Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. One day, they (was - are - were) playing in the park when they found a note.
2. I (was - were - are) walking to the park.
3. My friend Ali and I (was - were - am) playing in the forest yesterday.
4. She (are - was - were) watering the plants.
5. What (is - was - were) you doing in the evening?
6. We (was - were - is) watching TV at night.
7. Taha (was - were - are) helping his mom in the kitchen.
8. Tom was writing his message (what - when - where) Grandma came in the room.

9. One day, they were (swim - swims - swimming) in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water.
10. Tom was working when Granddad (sent - send - sending) him a message.
11. Yesterday afternoon, John was (walks - walking - walked) his dog.
12. I was reading a book when my dad (came - coming - come) home.
13. What was (happening - happened - happen) yesterday?
14. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was (shine - shines - shining).
15. We were near my home, and we were (hoping - hope - hoped) to see some interesting animals and birds.
16. We were walking along the path (why - when - who) suddenly we saw a little house in the distance.
17. I (didn't - weren't - wasn't) watching TV when you called me.
18. They (are writing - write - were writing) a message when Mom called.
19. I (play - am playing - was playing) football at two yesterday.
20. She (did - is doing - was doing) the shopping when she saw her old friend.

4 Complete the sentences with the past continuous or past simple form of the verbs in brackets:

Student's Book

1. Fatima .... (do) her homework when she .... (get) a text message from her friend.
2. Ghada and I .... (play) computer games when her brother .... (arrive) home.
3. I .... (not watch) TV when you .... (call) me.
4. .... (are) you .... (look) at your phone when I .... (see) you in the street?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. One day, they were .... (swim) in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water.
2. Tom .... (is working) when Granddad sent him a message.

3. One day, they were playing in the park when they .... (find) a note.
4. I was reading a book .... (where) my dad came home.
5. What was .... (happened) yesterday?
6. Hazem was .... (watch) a football match when Egypt scored a goal.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. happening - yesterday - What - was?
   ▶ .... ?
2. sea - lived - grandparents - Tom's - by - the.
   ▶ ....
3. me - when you - called - I - watching TV - wasn't.
   ▶ ....

7 Make up a story beginning with the following:

Yesterday, I was on the beach near my house. It was morning, and it was sunny. I was walking with my friend when we ....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 3 The boy who cried wolf



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



wolf ذئب



sheep خروف



shepherd راعي



village قرية



villagers القرويون - سكان القرية



hill تل

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

fun	متعة	joke	مزحة - نكتة
alone	وحيدًا - منفردًا	field	حقل
lying (verb: lie)	مضجعًا	suddenly	فجأة

Prepositions حروف الجر

angry with	غاضب من	on your own	بمفردك
look after	يعتني بـ	go back	يعود - يرجع
put down	يضع ارضًا	at the top of the hill	عند قمة التل
worried about	قلق بشأن	at the end	في النهاية

Adjectives صفات

untrue	غير حقيقي	angry	غضبان
bored	يشعر بالملل	real	حقيقي
lonely	وحيد	delicious	لذيذ
busy	مشغول	scared	خائف - مرعوب

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

once	ذات مرة	have fun	يستمتع
tell the truth	يقول الصدق	watching his sheep	يراقب أغنامه
tell stories	يحكي قصص	waste time	يضيع الوقت
main character	شخصية رئيسية	climb a tree	يتسلق شجرة
worked as a shepherd	عمل كراعي غنم	on the grass	علي الحشائش

Pronunciation

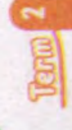
The /w/ sound

water	مياه	whale	حوت
wolf	ذئب	whisper	يهمس
west	غرب	white	لون أبيض
wave	موجة	what	ما - ماذا
walk	يمشي	when	متي
went	ذهب	where	أين

The stressed syllable المقطع المشدد

- المقطع المشدد عليه عند النطق هو الجزء من الكلمة الذي يتم نطقه بشكل أقوى من باقي أجزاء الكلمة.

▶ When a word has a prefix, the prefix usually isn't stressed.



- عندما تحتوي الكلمة على بادئة فإن البادئة لا تكون مشددة.

▶ If the base word has one syllable, the stress is on the base word.

- إذا كانت الكلمة الأساسية مكونة من مقطع واحد فإن التشديد يكون على هذا المقطع.

The stressed syllable words

resend	يعيد إرسال	incorrect	غير صحيح
replay	يعيد تشغيل	indoors	في الداخل
unhappy	غير سعيد	dislike	لا يحب
untidy	غير مرتب	disagree	لا يوافق

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after	looked after
rest	يسترخي- يستريح	rested	rested
appear	يظهر	appeared	appeared
annoy	يضايق	annoyed	annoyed
kill	يقتل	killed	killed
shout	يصرخ	shouted	shouted
climb	يتسلق	climbed	climbed
reach	يصل إلى	reached	reached
believe	يصدق	believed	believed
arrive	يصل	arrived	arrived
save	ينقذ	saved	saved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
lie	يرقد - يضجع	lay	lain
lay down	يستلقي	laid down	laid down
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
tell	يحكي	told	told
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
come	يأتي	came	come
run	يجري	ran	run
leave	يغادر	left	left
go back	يعود	went back	gone back
take	يأخذ	took	took
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Listening Script



الولد الذي صرخ قائلاً هناك ذئب

Once there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village. He worked alone as a shepherd, looking after sheep. Every day he took the sheep up the hill and rested while the sheep ate the delicious grass.



ذات يوم، كان هناك صبي اسمه بيتر يعيش في إحدى القرى. كان يعمل وحده راعيًا، يرعى الأغنام. وكان يأخذ الأغنام كل يوم إلى أعلى التل ويستريح بينما تأكل الأغنام العشب اللذيذ.

One day, Peter was lying on the grass watching his sheep. He felt lonely and bored and decided to have some fun. First, he shouted "Wolf! There's a wolf!" to the villagers in the field below. Next, he laid down and waited. The villagers were busy working, but they were worried about Peter's sheep, so they put down their tools and ran to save them.

في أحد الأيام، كان بيتر مستلقيًا على العشب يراقب أغنامه. لقد شعر بالوحدة والملل وقرر الاستمتاع ببعض المرح. أولًا، صرخ قائلًا: "ذئب! هناك ذئب!" إلى القرويين في الحقول بالأسفل. بعد ذلك، استلقى وانتظر. كان القرويون منشغلين بأعمالهم، لكنهم كانوا قلقين على أغنام بيتر، فتركوا أدواتهم وركضوا لإنقاذها.

They reached the top of the hill, hot and tired. They saw Peter. He was lying under a tree and he was laughing. "There is no wolf! It was a joke!" he said. The villagers were very angry and said. "Peter, you must tell the truth!" After that they left Peter and went back to work.

وصلوا إلى قمة التل، وهم يشعرون بالحرّ ومتعبين. ثم رأوا بيتر. كان يرقد تحت شجرة وكان يضحك. وقال: "لا يوجد ذئب! لقد كانت مزحة!". فغضب القرويون جدًا وقالوا: "بيتر، يجب أن تقول الحقيقة!" وبعد ذلك تركوا بيتر وعادوا إلى أعمالهم.

Then, Peter did the same thing again later that week. The villagers were very angry. "Peter, you mustn't waste our time! We're very busy!" they said. Finally, on the last day of the week, Peter was with his sheep at the top of the hill when suddenly a real wolf appeared.

Peter was very scared and climbed a tree. He called and called for someone to help him but no one arrived. The wolf killed and ate the sheep. Peter understood why no one came, and he was very sorry.



ثم فعل بيتر نفس الشيء مرة أخرى في وقت لاحق من ذلك الأسبوع. كان القرويون غاضبين جدًا. وقالوا: "بيتر، يجب ألا تضيع وقتنا! نحن مشغولون للغاية!" أخيرًا، في اليوم الأخير من الأسبوع، كان بيتر مع أغنامه على قمة التل عندما ظهر ذئب حقيقي فجأة. كان بيتر خائفًا جدًا وتسلّق شجرة. وأخذ ينادي وينادي لكي يأتي أحد ويساعده، لكن لم يأتِ أحد. قتل الذئب الأغنام وأكلها. فهم بيتر لماذا لم يأت أحد، وكان آسفًا جدًا.

GRAMMAR STUDY

Sequencing adverbs ظروف التسلسل (التتابع)

- We use sequencing adverbs to say when things happen. They help us to understand the order of events. This makes the text easier to follow.

- نستخدم ظروف التسلسل للتعبير عن متى تحدث الأشياء. فهي تساعدنا على فهم ترتيب الأحداث، مما يجعل متابعة (فهم) النص أسهل.

Key words:

First	أولاً - الأول	After that	بعد ذلك
Next	التالي	Finally	أخيرًا
Then	ثم		

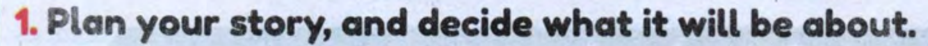
For example:

Salatet Zabadee Recipe وصفة سلطة الزبادي

1. **First**, take a cucumber and cut it in pieces.
   ◄ أولاً، خذ خيارة وقطعها إلى قطع.
2. **Next**, mix the yogurt and mint in a bowl.
   ◄ ثم، اخلط الزبادي والنعناع في وعاء.
3. **After that**, add some garlic and salt if you like.
   ◄ بعد ذلك، أضِف بعض الثوم والملح لو أردت.
4. **Finally**, take it to the table for everyone to enjoy!
   ◄ أخيرًا خذها لطاولة الطعام ليستمتع بها الجميع!







How to write a story
كيف تكتب قصة



1. Plan your story, and decide what it will be about.
◀ خطط لقصتك وقرر عن ماذا ستكون.

2. Write a first draft of your story.
◀ اكتب مسودة لقصتك.

3. Check and correct your spelling and grammar.
◀ راجع وصحح الهجاء والقواعد في القصة.

4. Share it with friends and enjoy!
◀ شارك قصتك مع الأصدقاء واستمتع!

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bored - grass - wolf - shepherd - sheep

Peter was a boy who lived in a village. He worked as a ① .... Every day he took the ② .... up the mountain and rested while the sheep ate the delicious grass. One day, he felt lonely and ③ .... and decided to have some fun, he shouted, "Wolf! There's a ④ ....!" But that was untrue.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. If you tell (true - untrue - correct) stories many times, no one will believe you.
2. A (teacher - farmer - shepherd) is a person who looks after sheep.
3. A (monkey - wolf - horse) is an animal which looks like a dog, but it is very dangerous.
4. (Villagers - Teachers - Drivers) are people who live in a village.
5. The (wolf - sheep - fox) is a farm animal that eat grass.
6. We laugh when someone tells us a (story - lesson - joke).
7. Your words are (true - right - incorrect). No one can believe that.
8. When you (whisper - cry - shout), no one can hear you.
9. When you tell the (stories - truth - lies), everyone likes you.







3 Number the story in the correct order. Then complete with the adverbs of sequencing from the box:

Student's Book

After that - Finally - First - Next - Then

The Boy Who Cried Wolf

a. ...., he shouted "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep. ☐

b. ...., a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry. ☐

c. ...., he said there was no wolf and it was a joke. ☐

d. .... Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an idea. ☐

e. ...., Peter did it again. ☐

f. ....,the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time. ☐

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Peter was a shepherd boy who lived in a village. He was looking after sheep. Every day he rested while the sheep ate the delicious grass. One day, he felt lonely and bored and decided to have some fun. First, he shouted "Wolf! There's a wolf!" to the villagers in the field below. The villagers ran to save them. They saw Peter lying under a tree and he was laughing. "There is no wolf! It was a joke!" he said. The villagers were very angry. After that they left Peter and went back to work. Peter did the same thing again later that week. Finally, a real wolf appeared. Peter was very scared and climbed a tree. He called and called for someone to help him but no one arrived. The wolf killed and ate the sheep. Peter understood why no one came, and he was very sorry.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Peter was looking after (wolves - camels - sheep).



2. The opposite of the underlined word "bored" is (lonely - lazy - excited).
3. Peter was a (vet - shepherd - driver).

B Answer these questions:

4. What did Peter do when a real wolf appeared?
▶ ....
5. Was Peter happy at the end of the story? Why?
▶ ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Let's .... (unsend) the message. We want to send it again.
2. Why do you .... (unlike) surfing? You shouldn't hate it.
3. He was .... (happy). He was sad.
4. This answer is .... (correct). It's wrong.
5. Why do you .... (unagree) with him?
6. The room is .... (tidy). It's messy.
7. Please .... (unplay) the video. I want to see it again.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. indoors - like - I - playing.
▶ ....
2. is - character - the main - the story - Who - in?
▶ .... ?
3. dislike - do - Why - you - surfing?
▶ .... ?
4. the sheep - and save - came - The villagers - to help.
▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. why did the main character annoy the villagers
▶ ....
2. once there was a boy called peter who lived in a village
▶ ....
3. why does nancy dislike surfing
▶ ....

Lessons 4 5 Writing: The ending of a story & Project



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



coast ساحل



sailing الإبحار



excited متحمس



reply (n) رد - استجابة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

sail by boat	يبحر بالقارب	**at the top**	في الأعلى
with best wishes	مع أطيب الأمنيات	**send a message**	يرسل رسالة
came into the room	دخل إلي الغرفة	**enjoy reading**	يستمتع بالقراءة
You are welcome.	أنت مرحبًا بك.	**a long way**	مسافة طويلة
how far	كم المسافة	**by plane**	بالطائرة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	enjoyed
sail	يبحر	sailed	sailed
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
visit	يزور	visited	visited
reply	يرد - يستجيب	replied	replied

What does Tom decide to do? ماذا قرر توم أن يفعل؟

Many years passed and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message.

مرت سنوات عديدة، وكبر توم. لقد نَسِيَّ هو وجدّاه الرسالة في الزجاجة. وفي أحد الأيام، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة.

Tom, you won't believe it! We have a reply to our message in a bottle! توم، لن تصدق ذلك! لدينا رد على رسالتنا التي في الزجاجة!

That weekend, Tom went to his grandparents' house.

"A man in France found the message," said Granddad. "Look, here is his reply."

في عطلة نهاية ذلك الأسبوع، ذهب توم إلى منزل جدّيْه.

قال الجد: «عثر رجل في فرنسا على الرسالة. انظر، ها هو رده.



Search

From : Hugo

To : Tom

Hello Tom,

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.

I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green.

You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!

With best wishes,

Hugo

من : هوجو

إلى : توم

مرحبًا يا توم،

اسمي هوجو وأعيش في بياريتز، في فرنسا. أعيش على الساحل وأحب الإبحار بقاربي. في الأسبوع الماضي، كنت أُبحِر عندما رأيتُ شيئًا ما في الماء - رسالتك في الزجاجة! وهذا يعني أنها سافرت أكثر من 6000 كيلو متر.

لقد استمتعتُ بالقراءة عن الأشياء المفضلة لديك. أشيائي المفضلة هي قاربي والمانجو واللون الأخضر.

أنت مُرَحَّبٌ بك جدًا لتأتي لزيارتي في فرنسا يومًا ما!

مع أطيب التمنيات،

هوجو

Tom was very excited. "Wow, our message traveled a really long way!" Later that evening, Tom was writing something when Granddad came into the room.

كان توم متحمسًا جدًا. "واو، لقد سافرت رسالتنا مسافةً طويلةً للغاية!" وفي وقت لاحق من مساء ذلك اليوم، كان توم يكتب شيئًا عندما دخل جده إلى الغرفة.

"What are you doing, Tom?"

"ماذا تفعل يا توم؟"

"I'm writing to Hugo."

"أنا أكتب لهوجو."

"Why, are you going to visit him?"

"لماذا، هل ستذهب لزيارته؟"

"You and I are both going to visit him!"

"سنذهب أنا وأنت لزيارته!"

"That's a great idea," laughed Granddad. "But it's a long way, so let's go by plane!"

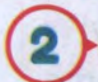
ضحك الجد وقال: "هذه فكرة رائعة. ولكن الطريق طويل، لذا دعنا نذهب بالطائرة!"

Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 **Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

reading – message – coast – sailing – traveled

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the ① .... and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was ② .... my boat when I saw something in the water – your ③ .... in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers. I enjoyed ④ .... about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green.



2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

excited – reply – bottle – travel – message

Tom and his grandparents forgot about the message in a ① .... that they threw in the sea. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message. A man in France found the message and sent his ② .... They had a reply to their ③ .... in a bottle! Tom was very ④ .... Their message traveled a really long way!

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. I live on the coast and I love (driving - sailing - flying) my boat.
2. They had a (delivery - test - reply) to their message in a bottle!
3. Tom was very (excited - boring - lazy). His message traveled a really long way!
4. Many years passed and Tom (sent - loved - grew) up with his grandparents.
5. A man in France found the message and sent his (boat - reply - coast) to it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hello Tom,

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.

I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green.

You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!

With best wishes,

Hugo

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "it" refers to the (boat - bottle - coast).
2. Hugo lives on the (coast - river - boat).
3. Hugo loves (pushing - pulling - sailing) his boat.

B Answer these questions:

4. Where is Hugo from?

▶ ....

5. How long did the message travel?

▶ ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Tom was .... (write) something when Granddad came into the room.
2. I enjoyed .... (read) about your favorite things.
3. Last week, I was .... (sailed) when I saw something in the water.
4. I love .... (sail) my boat.
5. How did they .... (found) the message?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. reading about - things - enjoyed - I - your favorite.

▶ ....

2. story - are going - You - to write - a short.

▶ ....

3. How - the message - find - did - they?

▶ .... ?

4. our message - a reply to - a bottle - We - have - in!

▶ .... !

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what did granddad think of tom's idea
   ▶ ....
2. tom went to his grandparents' house
   ▶ ....
3. a man in france found the message
   ▶ ....
4. how does tom feel
   ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Amira:

Tell her your reply to her last email. Tell her the answer to her question about the place you would like to visit in the world and why. Your email address is dina@school.net and your friend's email address is amira@gmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,

....
....
....
....
....
...................,
.... !



Test 5 on Unit 9

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)



1 Read and complete the dialogue: (10Ms)

setting - market - stories - ending - characters

Mom : What are you doing, Lama?

Lama : I'm writing a review of one of Goha's ① ....

Mom : Which one?

Lama : The one about a man who goes to the ② .... with his son and a donkey. The ③ .... is the countryside, many years ago.

Mom : Great! Tell me more.

Lama : Two of the ④ .... – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey.

Mom : What happened in the end?

Lama : In the ⑤ .... of the story, they both carry the donkey!

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (10Ms)

1. sheep - wolf - boy - cat
2. surfed - laughed - sailed - left
3. hill - shepherd - villager - farmer
4. beach - coast - bottle - sea
5. unhappy - understand - untidy - unsafe

3 Choose the correct answer: (10Ms)

1. The (narrator - setting - ending) is France in 2005.
2. Two of the (stories - endings - characters) – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey.
3. We went to the beach to (surf - send - happen) and swim.

4. The (wolves - goats - giraffes) are dangerous animals that eat sheep.

5. (Jokes - Tests - Books) make us laugh.

6. What were you (do - did - doing) yesterday?

7. Mom was cooking lunch (what - when - where) Dad came home.

8. I (didn't - weren't - wasn't) doing my homework when you called me.

6. We were (swim - swims - swimming) in the sea when we saw a dolphin.

10. They were playing in the park when they (found - find - finding) a note.

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

Hi, my name is Sherif. My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon, and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's go and look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him. Near the house, there were some sheep and goats. We found out that the house belonged to a shepherd. He was a kind man and invited us to have some fresh juice.

A Answer these questions:

1. Where were Sherif and his friend yesterday?

▶ ....

2. What was the weather like?

▶ ....

3. What did the shepherd invite Sherif and his friend to?

▶ ....

B Choose the correct answer:

4. Sherif and his friend were in the forest in the (morning - afternoon - evening).

5. The house belonged to a (scientist - hunter - shepherd).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (10Ms)

1. dislike - do - you - surfing - Why?
   ▶ .... ?
2. the - both - They - donkey - carry!
   ▶ .... !
3. did - What - the wolf - the end - eat - at?
   ▶ .... ?
4. writing - was - Tom - message - his.
   ▶ ....
5. is - character - the main - the story - Who - in?
   ▶ .... ?

6 Write an email to your friend Hend: (10Ms)

Tell her about an interesting story you read at the library and you enjoyed it a lot. Your email address is yasmeen@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is hend@yahoo.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,

....

....

....

..................,

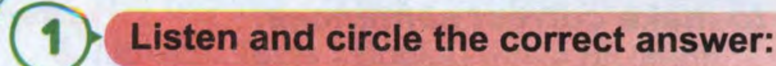
....





1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)





نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. Hugo is from (England - China - Egypt - France).
2. Hugo loves (surfing - sailing - sinking - selling) his boat.
3. Hugo's favorite color is (blue - gray - green - red).
4. Hugo saw a message in a (bottle - box - book - ball) in the water!

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Goha's stories have a (character - setting - countryside - moral) that he wants to teach us.
2. Don't (whisper - cry - shout - scream). Your voice is low and I can't hear you.
3. First, Tom sent a message to his granddad. Then, Granddad sent a (test - book - reply - note) to his message.
4. My grandma is a great (setting - narrator - moral - ending). She always tells us interesting stories.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

piece – Finally – First – After – fold

Do you know how to write a message in a bottle? ① ...., you should have a pen, a bottle and a ② .... of paper. Next, you should write a message on the piece of paper. Then, you should ③ .... the paper. After that, you should put it in the bottle. ④ ...., throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

One day, Goha went to a big dinner party. He was wearing old clothes. When he arrived, nobody looked at him or gave him a seat at a table. So, Goha went back home, put on his best clothes, and went back to the party. The host at once got up and took him to the best table. He gave him a good seat and offered him the best dishes. Goha took off his coat and put it in the food and said, "Eat, coat!" The other guests were very surprised and said,

"What are you doing?" Goha answered, "I'm inviting my coat to eat". When I was wearing my old clothes, nobody looked at me or offered me food, and when I came back in these clothes, you gave me the best food. So, you gave these to me for my clothes, not for me.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The host liked (Goha - Goha's new clothes - Goha's old clothes - Goha's food).
2. Goha was (rich - foolish - silly - clever).
3. Goha went to a big (birthday - wedding - dinner - lunch) party.

B Answer these questions:

4. Why were the guests surprised? ▶ ....
5. What did the host give Goha after wearing his best clothes? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. the sheep - and save - came - The villagers - to help. ▶ ....
2. Why - an - activity - reading - is - important? ▶ .... ?
3. the - both - donkey - carry - They! ▶ .... !

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2Ms)

1. Yesterday afternoon, we .... (was playing) football.
2. I was .... (read) a book when my dad came home.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- ayman was riding a bike when he met his friend magdy ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"What you were doing yesterday afternoon"

▶ Ideas to help you:

meeting friends - going to the park - riding bikes - playing

....

....

....

....





Review 3 based on units (7 - 8 - 9)

Listening Script



What's your favorite story?

ما هي قصتك المفضلة؟

Reader A : Nadia went to the shops with her friends. They bought some clothes, some jewelry and some snacks. Then, they passed a toy shop. In the window of the toy shop was a cuddly toy. "Oh, look!" said Nadia, "Last time I came here I was with my sister. She loved this cuddly toy. I'm going to buy it for her!"



القارئ أ : ذهبت نادية إلى المحلات التجارية مع صديقاتها. واشتروا بعض الملابس وبعض المجوهرات وبعض الوجبات الخفيفة. ثم مروا بمحل ألعاب. في نافذة متجر الألعاب كانت هناك لعبة محبوبة. قالت نادية: "أوه، انظروا! آخر مرة أتيتُ فيها إلى هنا كنتُ مع أختي. لقد أحبَّت هذه اللعبة المحبوبة. سأشتريها لها!"

Reader B : Last summer, I moved to a big, busy city. I really missed the countryside. Then, one afternoon, I was walking through the middle of the city when I found a beautiful park. I spent the rest of the day there, among the trees and the flowers. I still miss the countryside sometimes, but I go to the park every day. It's my favorite place in the whole city!



القارئ ب : في الصيف الماضي، انتقلتُ إلى مدينة كبيرة ومزدحمة. لقد اشتقتُ للريف حقًا. وبعد ظهر أحد الأيام، كنتُ أسير في وسط المدينة عندما وجدتُ حديقة جميلة. قضيتُ بقية اليوم هناك بين الأشجار والزهور. مازلتُ أفتقد الريف في بعض الأحيان، لكني أذهب إلى الحديقة كل يوم. إنه المكان المفضل لديّ في المدينة بأكملها!

Reader C : One day, a little monkey was feeling bored. He climbed to the top of the tallest tree and looked around. Nearby, some other little monkeys were playing a game. "Come and play with us!" they shouted. But the little monkey felt shy. Slowly, he went closer. And slowly, he felt braver. Before long, the little monkey felt happy. It was good to have fun!



القارئ ج : في أحد الأيام، كان هناك قردٌ صغيرٌ يشعر بالملل. فصعد إلى قمة أطول شجرة ونظر حوله. وفي مكان قريب، كانت هناك بعض القرود الصغيرة الأخرى تلعب لعبة. فصاحوا قائلين: "تعال والعب معنا!" لكن القرد الصغير شعر بالخجل. واقترب ببطء. ثم بدأ يتشجّع شيئًا فشيئًا. وسرعان ما شعر القرد الصغير بالسعادة. لقد كان من الجيد أن يحظى ببعض المتعة!

Reader D : When I was a boy, I liked to go to the beach with my grandfather. We used his metal detector to find interesting things in the sand. One time, we found a small, metal box.



"Treasure!" I said. My grandfather laughed. "Go on, then," he said. "What's inside?" I opened the box. Inside, there was a very special kind of treasure. It was a letter. A very old letter...

القارئ د : عندما كنت صبيًا، كنت أحب الذهاب إلى الشاطئ مع جدي. وكنا نستخدم كاشف المعادن الخاص به للعثور على أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام في الرمال. ذات مرة، وجدنا صندوقًا معدنيًا صغيرًا. فقلتُ: "كنزا!" ضحك جدي وقال: "أكمِل إذن. ماذا يوجد في الداخل؟" فتحتُ الصندوق، وبداخله كان هناك نوع خاص جدًا من الكنوز. لقد كانت رسالة. رسالة قديمة جدًا ...



Playing in the school yard

اللعب في ساحة المدرسة

One day, Fares and Ramy were playing hopscotch in the school yard. They were drawing squares using different colored chalk when their friend Magdy came to talk to them.

في أحد الأيام، كان فارس ورامي يلعبان الحَجْلَة في ساحة المدرسة. كانوا يرسمون مربعات باستخدام طباشير ملون مختلف عندما جاء صديقهم مجدي للتحدث معهم.

"What are you playing?" asked Magdy.

سأل مجدي: "ماذا تلعبان؟"

"It's hopscotch!" said Fares. "Do you want to play?"

قال فارس: "نلعب الحَجْلَة! هل تريد أن تلعب؟"

"How do you play it?" asked Magdy.

سأل مجدي: "كيف تلعبونها؟"

"It's very easy," said Ramy. "First, you throw this rock onto the squares. Next, you see which square it is in. Then you hop to the end of the squares and back, but you have to jump over the square with your rock."

قال رامي: "إنها سهلة للغاية. أولاً، تقوم برمي هذه الحَجَرة في المربعات. بعد ذلك، ترى في أي مربع توجد الحَجَرة. ثم تقفز إلى نهاية المربعات وتعود، ولكن يجب عليك القفز فوق المربع الذي توجد فيه الحَجَرة."

"Great! I'd love to have a go!" said Magdy.

قال مجدي: "رائع! أود أن أجربها!"



HOME ARCHIVE CONTACT PAGES

Our museum visit

زيارة متحفنا

By Dalia

بواسطة داليا

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many interesting artifacts to see. My brother and I were walking around when we found a room that had lots of animal statues, The Ancient Egyptians made lots of animal statues, because animals were very important in their culture. First, we saw different statues in gold and silver. Then we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too.

في الصيف الماضي، ذهبنا إلى متحف في المدينة. كان هناك الكثير من القطع الأثرية المثيرة للاهتمام لرؤيتها. كنت أنا وأخي نتجول عندما وجدنا غرفة بها الكثير من تماثيل الحيوانات. صنع المصريون القدماء الكثير من تماثيل الحيوانات، لأن الحيوانات كانت مهمة جدًا في ثقافتهم. أولًا، رأينا تماثيل مختلفة من الذهب والفضة. ثم رأينا بعض التماثيل المصنوعة من الطين الصلصال والحجارة والجرانيت أيضًا.

My favorite was a small snake made of metal. My brother liked a gold falcon with blue glass eyes. There were lots of cats made of brightly colored stone, too. The Ancient Egyptians adored cats. They believed that cats kept them safe.

كان التمثال المفضل لديّ هو تمثال ثعبان صغير مصنوع من المعدن. أَحَبّ أخي الصقر الذهبي ذو العيون الزجاجية الزرقاء. كان هناك الكثير من القطط المصنوعة من الحجارة ذات الألوان الزاهية أيضًا. كان المصريون القدماء يعشقون القطط. لقد كانوا يعتقدون أن القطط تحميهم.

Test 7 on Unit 7 8 9

Review 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. The Ancient Egyptians started using (iron - plastic - glass - wood) more than 5,000 years ago.
2. Some of their early iron was from (statues - tombs - meteorites - museums).
3. Ancient Egyptian (doctors - teachers - archaeologists - craftsmen) made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb.
4. Iron was more (precious - delicious - kind - cheap) than gold because it was rarer.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Who is your favorite (setting - ending - character - moral) in the story?
2. I like playing computer games with my friends, but they usually (heat - beat - start - paint) me.
3. Granite is a very hard and (wet - dry - durable - excited) stone.
4. A(farmer - shepherd - driver - doctor) looks after sheep.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

toys - making up - outside - figures - older

When she was little, Amina really liked games that used a lot of imagination. She was very good at ① .... stories. She had a doll's house, some cuddly ② ...., and some action ③ .... Her sister Nour really enjoyed playing ④ .... when she was younger. She liked running, climbing, and playing tennis. She was quite good at football, too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Hi, I'm Kareem. I have one brother. His name is Waleed. Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many interesting artifacts to see. My brother and I were walking around when we found a room that had lots of animal statues. The Ancient Egyptians made lots of animal statues because animals were very important in their culture. First, we saw different statues in gold and silver. Then we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too.

Review

My favorite was a small snake made of metal. My brother liked a gold falcon with blue glass eyes. There were lots of cats made of brightly colored stone, too. The Ancient Egyptians adored cats. They believed that cats kept them safe.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Last summer, we went to the (beach - museum - library - school) to see the artifacts.
2. My brother and I were walking around when we found a room that had lots of (animal - bird - people - plant) statues.
3. The Ancient Egyptians made lots of animal (statues - tombs - rooms - buildings) because animals were very important in their culture.

B Answer these questions:

4. What did Kareem and Waleed see in the museum? ▶ ....
5. Why did the Ancient Egyptians adore cats? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. angry - villagers - The - were - very. ▶ ....
2. countryside - I - the - missed - really. ▶ ....
3. play - How - you - do - game - this? ▶ .... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2Ms)

1. Why does she .... (unlike) surfing?
2. What did King Midas .... (wishes) for?

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

○ mona enjoys playing marbles on sundays ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"My favorite pet"

▶ Ideas to help you:

- What is it? - What does it eat? - Where does it sleep? - Why do you like it?

....
....
....
....



Unit 10 Free as a bird

حرًا كالطير

In this unit I will ....

- listen, read, research, and write about bird and animal proverbs.
- listen to and understand a presentation about eco-tourism in Egypt.
- read and learn about eco-tourism and wildlife.
- use must / mustn't to talk about something we have to do.
- use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.
- read advertisements for eco-tourism vacations in Egypt.
- read and learn about bird migration.
- say words with two or three syllables.
- read and write a blog about animal habitats.
- create an information leaflet about the Nile Delta.

Objectives

Vocabulary	Bird and animal proverbs/bird **migration:** successful, similar, careful, sensible, real, pelican, kingfisher, swift, eagle **Eco-tourism:** sustainable, simple accommodation, ideal, respect, camp, coral reefs,protected area
Language	Using must/mustn't to talk about something we have to do Using the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future
Reading	- A dialog about bird and animal proverbs - A guidebook for eco-tourism in Egypt - Ads for vacations in Egypt - An online article about bird migration
Listening	- A dialog about animal and bird proverbs
Speaking	- Discussing what proverbs mean - Discussing activities on an eco-tourism vacation
Writing	- Write a blog about animal habitats
Project	- Make an information leaflet about the Nile Delta
Pronunciation	Words with two or three syllables
Life skills	Using proverbs to teach and reinforce morals
Values	Understanding and applying proverbs
Issues and challenges	Appreciating the benefits of eco- tourism Integrated cross-cultural topics: Science: Bird migration



Lesson 1 Birds of a feather

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





proverb
مَثَل - قول مأثور



successful
ناجح



careful
حريص



sensible
عقلاني - منطقي



real
حقيقي - واقعي



similar
متشابه

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

description	وصف	flock (v)	تتجمع - تحتشد
meaning	معنى	hatch	تفقس
mention	يذكر - ينوه	plans	خِطط
worm	دودة	ostrich	نعامة
feathers	ريش	eagle	نسر
nest	عش	chickens	دجاج

Adjectives صفات

early	مبكر	scary	مخيف - مرعب
strange	غريب	true	حقيقي
large	كبير - واسع	high	عالٍ - مرتفع

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

make plans	يضع خطط	**look the same**	تبدو متشابهة
make mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء	**Well done!**	أحسنت!
do the same things	يقوم بعمل نفس الأشياء	**You're getting the idea.**	لقد فهمت الفكرة.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
flock	تتجمع - تحتشد	flocked	flocked
mention	يذكر - يقصد	mentioned	mentioned
hatch	يفقس	hatched	hatched
stay	يبقى - يمكث	stayed	stayed
count	يعد	counted	counted
suggest	يقترح	suggested	suggested
try	يحاول	tried	tried
seem	تبدو	seemed	seemed
succeed	ينجح	succeeded	succeeded
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
dare	يتجرأ	dared	dared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
have	يملك - يمتلك	had	had
tell	يخبر	told	told
know	يعرف	knew	known
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen

Present		Past	PP
fly	يطير	flew	flown
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
build	يبني	built	built
mean	يعني	meant	meant
catch	يصطاد	caught	caught
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
sing	يغني	sang	sung

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

proverb	: a well-known phrase about something which is generally true has another meaning as well as its exact meaning
sensible	: a good idea that someone has thought about carefully
successful	: Someone who tries to do something, and does it
careful	: a person who tries hard not to make mistakes
similar	: two things might look the same or do the same things
real	: something which happens and is true



Read and learn



The proverb القول المأثور

The proverb is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true. It has another meaning as well as its exact meaning.

القول المأثور هو عبارة شهيرة عن شيئٍ ما والتي تكون عاةً صحيحة. يحمل المثل معنى آخر بالإضافة إلى المعنى الحرفي لها.

Some famous proverbs بعض الأقوال المأثورة المشهورة

1. The early bird catches the worm.

المعنى الحرفي: الطائر المبكر هو الذي سيلتقط الدودة (هو الذي سيحصل على طعامه).

المقصود: من يستيقظ مبكرًا للعمل سوف يكون لديه فرصة كبيرة للحصول على خيرٍ كثير.

2. Birds of a feather flock together.

المعنى الحرفي: الطيور ذات الريش المتشابه يتجمعون مع بعضهم في أسراب (الطيور على أشكالها تقع).

المقصود: الناس ذوي الصفات المتشابهة يصادقون بعض (أي من يصادق شخصًا سيئًا فهو مثله ومن يصادق شخصًا جيدًا فهو مثله.).

3. Don't count your chickens before they hatch.

المعنى الحرفي: لا تَعُد عدد الدجاج الذي تمتلكه حتى يفقس البيض.

المقصود: لا تستبق الأحداث وتتوقع أحداثًا كثيرة طيبة قد لا تحدث كلها.

4. The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly.

المعنى الحرفي: الطائر الذي لديه الجرأة على السقوط هو الذي لديه المقدرة على الطيران.

المقصود: من يريد النجاح لا يهاب المخاطرة.

5. Even an eagle will not fly higher than the sun.

المعنى الحرفي: حتي النسر لا يطير أعلي من الشمس.

المقصود: أي أن لكل شخص طاقة وحدود لا يستطيع تجاوزها فلا تحاول أن تقوم بما لا طاقة لك به.

6. Singing birds don't build nests.

المعنى الحرفي: الطيور التي تتفرغ للغناء فقط لا تبني أعشاشًا.

المقصود: أي أن الشخص الثرثار (كثير الكلام) لا يُرجى منه عملٌ نافع.

7. It is not only fine feathers which make fine birds.

المعنى الحرفي: ليس فقط الريش الجميل هو الذي يجعل الطائر جميلاً.

المقصود: أي أن المظهر الخارجي لا يُعبر عن الجوهر.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The biggest bird in the world is the ostrich. It can be about 210 cm long. It can run fast, but it can't fly! The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird. It is about 5.5 cm long.

أكبر طائر في العالم هو النعامة. ويمكن أن يبلغ طوالها حوالي 210 سم.يمكنها أن تجري بسرعة، لكنها لا تستطيع الطيران. أصغر طائر هو طائر النحل الطنان ويبلغ طوله حوالي 5.5 سم.





Who suggests meanings for the proverbs?

من الذي يقترح معاني للأقوال المأثورة؟

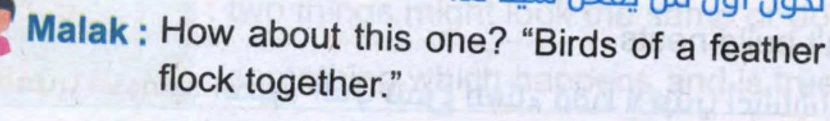


Malak : Injy, what does this proverb mean? "The early bird catches the worm."

ملك : إنجي، ماذا يعني هذا المَثَل؟ "الطائر المُبَكِّر يصطاد الدودة."

Injy : Well, proverbs have more than one meaning. This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

إنجي : حسنًا، الأمثال يكون لها أكثر من معنى. يخبرنا هذا المثل أن الطائر الذي يسبق، أو أول من يحاول اصطياد الدودة، عادة ما يصطادها. لذا فهو يعني أيضًا أنه لكي تكون ناجحًا، عليك أن تكون أول من يفعل شيئًا ما.

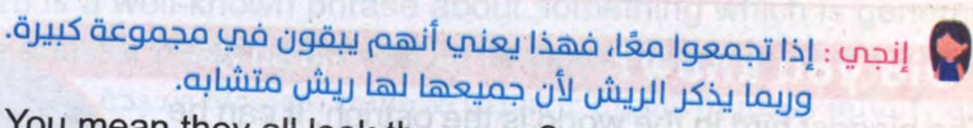


Malak : How about this one? "Birds of a feather flock together."



ملك : ماذا عن هذا؟ "الطيور على أشكالها تقع."

Injy : If they flock together, that means they stay in a large group. And maybe it mentions feathers because they all have similar feathers.



إنجي : إذا تجمعوا معًا، فهذا يعني أنهم يبقون في مجموعة كبيرة. وربما يذكر الريش لأن جميعها لها ريش متشابه.

Malak : You mean they all look the same?

ملك : هل تقصدين أن جميعها تبدو متشابهة؟

Injy : Yes. But here, it means that similar people like doing the same things.

إنجي : نعم. ولكن في هذه المَثَل، المقصود هو أن الأشخاص المتشابهين يحبون القيام بنفس الأشياء.

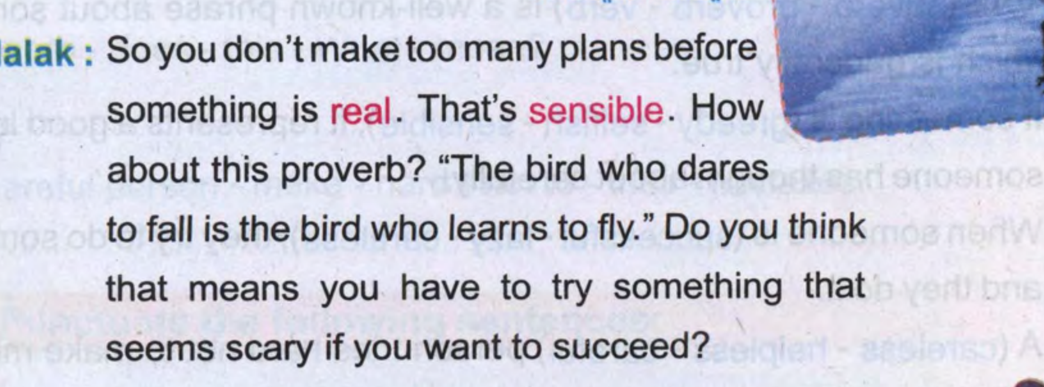
Malak : Okay, here's a strange one! "Don't count your chickens before they hatch."

 ملك : حسنًا، إليكِ مَثَل غريب! "لا تَعُدّ دجاجك قبل أن يفقس بيضه".

Injy : Well, you might have four eggs in a nest, but you don't really know how many will become chickens. So maybe it's about being careful before you know something will happen.

إنجي : حسنًا، قد يكون لديكِ أربع بيضات في عش، لكنكِ لا تعرفين حقيقةً كم واحدة منها ستصبح دجاجة. لذلك ربما يتعلق معناه بالحذر قبل أن تعرف أن شيئًا ما سيحدث.

Malak : So you don't make too many plans before something is real. That's sensible. How about this proverb? "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly." Do you think that means you have to try something that seems scary if you want to succeed?



ملك : لذلك لا تضعي الكثير من الخطط قبل أن يصبح الشيء حقيقيًا. هذا منطقي. ماذا عن هذا المَثَل؟ "الطائر الذي يجرؤ على السقوط هو الذي يتعلم الطيران." هل تعتقدين أن هذا المَثَل يعني أنه عليكِ تجربة الشيء الذي يبدو مخيفًا إذا كنتِ تريدين النجاح؟

Injy : Yes, I do. Well done, Malak! You're getting the idea!

 إنجي : نعم، أعتقد ذلك. أحسنتِ يا مَلَك! لقد فهمتِ الفكرة!

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

catch – proverb – worm – successful – meaning

"The early bird catches the worm." This is a famous ① .... Proverbs have more than one ② .... This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to ③ .... a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be ④ ...., you need to be the first to do something.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. A/An (adverb - proverb - verb) is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true.
2. If something is (greedy - selfish - sensible), it represents a good idea that someone has thought about carefully.
3. When someone is (successful - lazy - careless), they try to do something, and they do it.
4. A (careless - helpless - careful) person tries hard not to make mistakes.
5. When two things are (unlike - similar - different), they might look the same or do the same things.
6. If something is (false - wrong - real), it happens and is true.
7. A/An (adjective - pronoun - proverb) has another meaning as well as its exact meaning.
8. (Similar - Unlike - Different) people like doing the same things.
9. Birds always (bear - tear - hatch) eggs.
10. To be (successful - untidy - careless), you need to be the first to do something.
11. Birds make (nets - nests - tents) to live in.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What does this proverb .... (means)?
2. What do you .... (thinking) these proverbs mean?
3. Proverbs .... (has) more than one meaning.
4. Similar people like .... (do) the same things.
5. Did you .... (understood) the meanings?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. meanings - the - understand - you - Did?
   ▶ .... ?
2. doing - like - Similar people - things - the same.
   ▶ ....
3. proverb - does - this - What - mean?
   ▶ .... ?
4. A careful person - make - hard - not to - tries - mistakes.
   ▶ ....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. injy, what does this proverb mean
   ▶ ....
2. singing birds don't build nests
   ▶ ....
3. who suggests meanings for the proverbs: malak or injy
   ▶ ....

Lesson 2 Eco-tourism in Egypt



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

sustainable	مستدامة	vacation	إجازة
ideal	مثالي	accommodation	أماكن إقامة
simple	بسيط	camp (v) (n)	يعسكر (يخيم) - معسكر
respect (v)(n)	يحترم - احترام	tents	خيام
protected area	منطقة محمية	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية

Eco-tourism activities أنشطة السياحة البيئية

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	wildlife watching	مشاهدة الحياة البرية
tourists	سائحين	bird-watching	مشاهدة الطيور
snorkeling	الغطس باستخدام أنبوب للتنفس	climbing mountains	تسلق الجبال
sailing	الإبحار	taking photos	التقاط الصور
hiking	السير لمسافات طويلة	safari	رحلة سفاري

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

habitat	موطن طبيعي	Siwa Oasis	واحة
environment	بيئة	lizards	سحالي
nature	الطبيعة	crocodiles	تماسيح
the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر	turtles	سلاحف
the Nile	النيل	tour	جولة

guidebook	دليل سياحي- كتيب ارشادي	hotels	فنادق
information	معلومات	pollution	تلوث
cooking outdoors	الطهي في الأماكن المفتوحة	species	أنواع - فصائل
visiting beaches	زيارة الشواطئ	kinds	أنواع

Adjectives

amazing	مدهش	historical	تاريخي
important	مهم	popular	محبوبة - مشهورة
large	واسع	traditional	تقليدي
fantastic	رائع	quiet	هادئ
interesting	ممتع - شيق	warm	دافئ

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

going to restaurants	الذهاب إلى المطاعم	do underwater photography	يقوم بالتصوير تحت الماء
historical places	أماكن تاريخية	watching movies	مشاهدة الأفلام
from a safe distance	من مسافة آمنة	for example	على سبيل المثال
on vacation	في إجازة	going on a tour	الذهاب في جولة
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	water birds	طيور مائية
go sightseeing	مشاهدة المعالم السياحية	at a certain time of the year	في وقت محدد في السنة
close to	قريب من	come from	يأتي من
The sun went down.	غربت الشمس.	all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم
recycle trash	يعيد تدوير القمامة	a busy day	يوم مليء بالأشغال

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
explore	يستكشف	explored	explored
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
camp	يخيم	camped	camped
migrate	يهاجر	migrated	migrated
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
design	يصمم	designed	designed
sail	يبحر	sailed	sailed
respect	يحترم	respected	respected
scare	يُخيف	scared	scared
cause	يسبب	caused	caused
hope	يأمل	hoped	hoped
provide	توفر - تمد	provided	provided
damage	يدمر	damaged	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
become	يصبح	became	become
find	يجد	found	found
go down	تغرب	went down	gone down
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
leave	يترك	left	left
give	يعطي	gave	given
set off	ينطلق	sat off	sat off

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

respect	: like something and want to look after it
sustainable	: do something in a way that doesn't damage the environment
simple accommodation	: living in a place where you have what you need, and nothing more
accommodation	: somewhere you stay
ideal	: perfect or excellent
guidebook	: gives tourists information about a place



Read and learn

What is eco-tourism? ما هي السياحة البيئية؟



Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too.

مصر بلد رائع. هناك العديد من الأماكن التاريخية التي يمكنك زيارتها فيها، بالإضافة إلى المتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف. يمكن للناس ممارسة الغوص القريب من سطح الماء في البحر الأحمر، أو الذهاب في رحلة سفاري صحراوية، أو تسلُق الجبال، أو الإبحار في نهر النيل. لذا فإن السياحة مهمة - ولكن السياحة البيئية أصبحت شائعة جدًا أيضًا.

Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.

السياحة البيئية هي أسلوب سفر لا يضر بالبيئة. إنها أكثر استدامة من السياحة التقليدية، وتهدُف إلى حماية الطبيعة. يقيم الناس في أماكن إقامة بسيطة، وليس في فنادق كبيرة، ويجب ألا يسافروا بطرق تسبب الكثير من التلوث.

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for wildlife and bird-watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate – they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.

بدأ الكثير من الناس بزيارة مصر من أجل الحياة البرية ومراقبة الطيور. هناك الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام التي يمكنك رؤيتها هنا. تهاجر أنواع كثيرة من الطيور – يجب عليها أن تطير إلى بلدان مختلفة في أوقات معينة من السنة، لتعثُر على الطعام، أو لتبني أعشاش، أو لتحظى بطقس أكثر دفئًا. وفي كثير من الأحيان يتوجّب على الطيور أن تطير لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وكثير من رحلاتها تمر فوق مصر، لأنها تقع في شمال أفريقيا وقريبة من آسيا وأوروبا.

There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.



يوجد في مصر أكثر من 450 نوعًا من الطيور، ويأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم في إجازات لرؤيتها. على سبيل المثال، تُعَد واحة سيوة مكانًا رائعًا لمشاهدة العديد من الطيور المائية المهاجرة. إنها موطن مهم ويجب على الناس حمايتها.

People who go bird-watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too close to the birds, because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs!

سيكون لدى الأشخاص الذين يمارسون مراقبة الطيور في مصر الكثير مما يمكنهم رؤيته. يجب ألا يقتربوا كثيرًا من الطيور، لأنها قد تطير مبتعدةً، لكن يمكنهم المراقبة من مسافة آمنة والتقاط الكثير من الصور!

Wildlife watching is ideal for people who respect nature, and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

تعتبر مراقبة الحياة البرية مثالية بالنسبة للأشخاص الذين يحترمون الطبيعة، وتُعَد السياحة البيئية وسيلة جيدة للأشخاص للقيام بذلك.



Ads for vacations in Egypt
إعلانات لإجازات في مصر

1. On the river

Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things.

We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

مرحبًا، أنا نادية. في الشهر القادم، سنقوم بجولة لرؤية الطيور والحيوانات التي تعيش بالقرب من الماء. سنسافر على طول النهر في قوارب صغيرة ونُخَيِّم في خيام ليلاً. سنجلب معنا كاميراتنا لأننا سنرى بعض الأشياء المذهلة. نأمل أن نرى سحالي وسلاحف إضافة إلى الكثير من النباتات المثيرة للاهتمام. ولكن يجب ألا نسبح لأنه قد يكون هناك تماسيح!

2. Desert sunsets



Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting this place with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down - more animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.

مرحبًا، أنا آدم. أُحب زيارة هذا المكان مع عائلتي. لقد ذهبنا العام الماضي، وفي المساء، شاهدنا الكثير من الحياة البرية عندما غربت الشمس - يعيش عدد أكبر مما تعتقد من الحيوانات على الرمال. هذا العام سنبقى في الخارج ونطهو وجبات الطعام تحت النجوم، لذلك يجب علينا إحضار خيمة. ثم سنسير في مجموعات صغيرة لرؤية الحياة البرية من حولنا.

3. Snorkel safari



Hi, I'm Lara. We're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

مرحبًا، أنا لارا. ستتاح لنا الفرصة لالتقاط بعض الصور الفوتوغرافية تحت الماء في إجازتنا! سننطلق في جولة من الشاطئ بقوارب صغيرة، ونبحر إلى أماكن يمكننا فيها رؤية العديد من أنواع الأسماك المختلفة. توجد هناك أسماك جميلة ذات ألوان زاهية، بالإضافة إلى الشعاب المرجانية. الجولة ستكون في يومي الاثنين والأربعاء فقط لأن هذه منطقة محمية، لذلك يجب ألا يكون هناك الكثير من الرحلات.

4. Birds at sea



Hi, I'm Fares. Next week, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We'll visit quiet beaches on a small bus, to see how many different kinds we can see. The sea in this area is a very popular place for birds to find food, so it will be a busy day. We're definitely going to bring our cameras! We must bring our own lunches too, as there are no shops there.

مرحبًا، أنا فارس. في الأسبوع القادم، سنقوم بجولة لرؤية بعض الطيور الجميلة. سنقوم بزيارة شواطئ هادئة على متن حافلة صغيرة، لنرى عدد الأنواع المختلفة التي سيمكننا رؤيتها. يُعَد البحر في هذه المنطقة مكانًا مشهورًا جدًا للطيور لتعثر فيه على الطعام، لذلك سيكون يومًا حافلًا. سنُحضِر كاميراتنا بالتأكيد! يجب علينا إحضار وجبات الغداء الخاصة بنا أيضًا، حيث أنه لا توجد متاجر هناك.

GRAMMAR STUDY

must / mustn't يجب أن / لا يجب أن

must يجب أن - لازم

- **We use (must) when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do.**
- نستخدم (must) عندما نتحدث عن شيء لابد أن نفعله أو شيءٌ ما من المهم القيام به.

○ We must bring a tent.

mustn't لا يجب أن - ممنوع

- **We use (mustn't) (must not) when we are not allowed to do something.**
- نستخدم (mustn't) (must not) عندما لا يكون من المسموح لنا فعل شيءٌ ما.

○ We mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

لاحظ أن: لاحظ أن : الفعل بعد (must) و(mustn't) يأتي في المصدر بدون إضافات.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

safari - sail - snorkeling - tourism - historical

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many ① .... places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go ② .... in the Red Sea, go on a desert ③ ...., climb mountains, or ④ .... on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

vacations - sustainable - species - protect - migrating

There are over 450 ① .... of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on ② .... to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many ③ .... water birds. It is an important habitat and people must ④ .... it.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tour - underwater - coral - reefs - protected

Hi, I'm Lara. We're going to have the chance to do some ① .... photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a ② .... from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as ③ .... reefs. The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a ④ .... area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

4 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. To (respect - hurt - damage) means to like something and want to look after it.
2. (Harmful - Terrible - Sustainable) means to do something in a way that doesn't damage the environment.
3. (Simple - Difficult - Hard) accommodation means living in a place where you have what you need, and nothing more.
4. (Guidebook - Accommodation - Snorkeling) is somewhere you stay.
5. When something is (awful - ideal - terrible), it is perfect or excellent.
6. There are many (history - historical - historian) places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums.
7. The sea is very clear and there's a coral (reef - mountain - fish). It's beautiful!
8. (Guidebook - Eco-tourism - Snorkeling) is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment.
9. Eco-tourism is designed to (protect - hurt - damage) nature.
10. People can go (driving - shopping - snorkeling) in the Red Sea.
11. People stay in simple (information - vacation - accommodation), not large hotels.
12. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and (climb - sail - camp) in tents at night.
13. When people (respect - hurt - damage) the environment, they want to protect it.
14. If you go bird-watching, you mustn't get too (far - close - distant) to the birds.
15. Many birds (migrate - snorkel - sail) to find warmer weather in winter.
16. There are over 450 (spices - species - spaces) of birds in Egypt.

5 Choose the correct answer: (must - mustn't)

1. When we go camping, we (must - mustn't - can't) take a tent with us.
2. You (must - mustn't - can) leave trash on beaches.

3. You (can't - must - mustn't) respect nature when you go wildlife watching.
4. The birds often must (fly - flew - flying) very long distances.
5. We'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must (bringing - brought - bring) a tent.
6. They (must - mustn't - can) travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.
7. It is an important habitat and people (must - mustn't - shouldn't) protect it.
8. They mustn't (gets - getting - get) too close to the birds.
9. We (must - mustn't - should) swim here because there might be crocodiles!
10. This is a protected area, so there mustn't (are - is - be) too many trips.
11. You (must - mustn't - should) scare birds.
12. You must (studying - studied - study) the birds quietly from a safe place.

6 Read the text and answer the questions:

Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution. Many people are starting to visit Egypt for wildlife and bird-watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate – they must fly to different countries at certain times of the year to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. People mustn't travel in ways that (visit - cause - migrate) lots of pollution.
2. Eco-tourism is more (harmful - terrible - sustainable) than traditional tourism.
3. The opposite of the underlined word "damage" is (hurt - protect - pollute).

B Answer these questions:

4. What is eco-tourism?

▶ ....

5. Why must many kinds of birds fly to different countries?

▶ ....

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. They .... (must) travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.
2. It is an important habitat and people .... (mustn't) protect it.
3. They mustn't .... (gets) too close to the birds.
4. Many kinds of birds must .... (flew) to different countries at certain times of the year.
5. We .... (must) swim here because there might be crocodiles!
6. We must .... (bringing) a tent.
7. This is a protected area, so there mustn't .... (are) too many trips.
8. You .... (mustn't) respect nature. SB

8 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. too close - mustn't - to - They - get - the birds.

▶ ....

2. place - a fantastic - is - Siwa Oasis.

▶ ....

3. mustn't - You - trash - leave - the desert - in.

▶ ....

4. the natural - must be - careful in - You - environment.

▶ ....

5. Eco-tourism - environment - damage - the - doesn't.

▶ ....

6. snorkeling - can - go - People - in - Sea - the Red.

▶ ....

9 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. egypt is an amazing country

▶ ....

2. which activities would you like to do

▶ ....

3. people can go snorkeling in the red sea

▶ ....

4. what is eco-tourism

▶ ....

5. many people are starting to visit egypt for wildlife and bird-watching

▶ ....

6. which vacation would you like to go on

▶ ....

10 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"What you are going to see and do on your next vacation"

▶ **Ideas to help you:**

snorkel safari - desert sunsets - on the river - historical places

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3 The benefits of eco-tourism & Bird migration

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



benefits فوائد - منافع



environment البيئة



tourists سياح



campsite معسكر



eco-friendly صديق للبيئة



eco-tourism سياحة بيئية



sightseeing مشاهدة المعالم السياحية



views مناظر طبيعية

Migrating Birds الطيور المهاجرة



pelican بجعة




falcon صقر



eagle نسر



kingfisher طائر الرفراف




swift طائر السَمَّامَة



flamingo طائر الفلامنجو

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

migration	هجرة	cycling	ركوب الدراجات
scientist	عالم	relaxing	مريح
journey	رحلة طويلة	a hotel room	غرفة فندقية
visitors	زائرين	traditional	تقليدي
provide	يمد - يزود	successful	ناجح
presentation	عرض تقديمي	deadline	موعد تسليم

continent	قارة	along the Red Sea	بطول البحر الأحمر
Europe	أوروبا	Lake Qarun	بحيرة قارون
North Africa	أفريقيا الشمالية	oases	واحات
northern European countries	دول شمال أوروبا	Mediterranean coasts	سواحل البحر المتوسط

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

cause less damage	يسبب دمار أقل	flocks of birds	أسراب من الطيور
create new jobs	يخلق وظائف جديدة	eco-friendly accommodation	أماكن إقامة صديقة للبيئة
keen to learn	حريص علي التعلم	local communities	مجتمعات محلية
do activities	يقوم بأنشطة	local people	السكان المحليين
a very long distance	مسافة طويلة جدًا	look after	يعتني بـ
on the way	في الطريق	take care of	يهتم بـ

Pronunciation



A syllable المقطع

- A syllable is part of a word that has one vowel and consonants before and after the vowel.
- المقطع هو جزء من الكلمة يحتوي على حرف متحرك ناطق، ويوجد حروف ساكنة قبله وبعده.

Stressed syllable المقطع المشدد

- A stressed syllable is the syllable which is pronounced stronger than the other syllables.
- المقطع المشدد هو المقطع الذي ينطق بشكل أقوى من باقي المقاطع.

- Most two syllable words have the stress on the first syllable.
- المقطع المشدد في معظم الكلمات ذات المقطعين هو المقطع الأول.
- Three syllable words can have the stress on the first, the second or the third syllable.
- المقطع المشدد في الكلمات ذات الثلاث مقاطع إما أن يكون المقطع الأول أو المقطع الثاني أو المقطع الثالث.

Two-syllable words		Three-syllable words	
weath-er	طقس	**pel**-i-can	بجعة
fal-con	صقر	fla-**min**-go	طائر الفلامنجو
care-ful	حريص - حذر	suc-**cess**-ful	ناجح - موفق

Weather has 2 syllables and the stress is on the first syllable.
Falcon has 2 syllables and the stress is on the first syllable.
Careful has 2 syllables and the stress is on the first syllable.
Pelican has 3 syllables and the stress is on the first syllable.
Flamingo has 3 syllables and the stress is on the second syllable.
Successful has 3 syllables and the stress is on the second syllable.

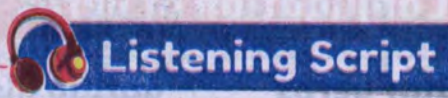
Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
miss	يفقد - يفوته	missed	missed
support	يدعم	supported	supported
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
stay	يقيم	stayed	stayed
prefer	يفضل	preferred	preferred
try	يحاول	tried	tried
learn	يتعلم	learned	learned
create	يخلق	created	created
migrate	يهاجر	migrated	migrated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
find out	يكتشف - يعرف	found out	found out
fly	يطير	flew	flown
see	يرى	saw	seen
make	يصنع	made	made
know	يعرف	knew	known
spend	يقضي	spent	spent
try	يحاول	tried	tried
read	يقرأ	read	read
take	يأخذ	took	taken





Lina's presentation about eco-tourism — عرض لينا عن السياحة البيئية

My presentation today is about eco-tourism and why it is a good idea. Egypt is a very beautiful country, so we must look after it. However, lots of people want to visit Egypt because it is a very interesting place.

عرضي اليوم يدور حول السياحة البيئية وسبب كونها فكرة جيدة. مصر بلد جميل جدًا، لذا يجب أن نعتني بها. ومع ذلك، يرغب الكثير من الناس في زيارة مصر لأنها مكان مثير للاهتمام للغاية.

It is good if we have lots of visitors, but tourism can sometimes mean too many big hotels and too much traffic. This can cause problems. Eco-tourism is good because people can visit and enjoy the environment but not in a way that damages the environment. These are my ideas about why I think eco-tourism is a good idea.

من الجيد أن يكون لدينا عدد كبير من الزوار، لكن السياحة قد تعني في بعض الأحيان وجود عدد كبير جدًا من الفنادق الكبيرة ووجود ازدحامات مرورية كثيرة جدًا. هذا يمكن أن يُسبب مشاكل. السياحة البيئية جيدة لأن تُمكّن الناس من زيارة البيئة والاستمتاع بها، ولكن ليس بطريقة تضرُّ بالبيئة. هذه هي أفكاري حول سبب اعتقادي أن السياحة البيئية فكرة جيدة.

If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it. If tourists take care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment. If tourists stay in simple, eco-friendly accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels. If eco-tourism is successful, it will create new jobs for the local people. Thank you for listening. Are there any questions?

إذا تعلم الناس المزيد عن البيئة، فسوف يرغبون في حمايتها. إذا اعتنى السيّاح بالأماكن التي يزورونها، فإنهم سيتسببون في ضرر أقل للبيئة. إذا أقام السيّاح في أماكن إقامة بسيطةٍ وصديقة للبيئة، فلن يكون هناك الكثير من الفنادق الكبيرة. إذا نجحت السياحة البيئية، فإنها ستخلق وظائف جديدة للسكان المحليين. شكرا لكم على الاستماع. هل هناك أية أسئلة؟



Listening Script

How much of an eco-tourist are you? ما مدى كونك سائحًا بيئيًا؟



You prefer traditional vacations, but you can still be an eco-tourist by helping the environment while you're away. For example, try to walk or travel by bus and train, and recycle your trash whenever possible.

أنت تُفَضِّل الإجازات التقليدية، ولكن لا يزال بإمكانك أن تكون سائحًا بيئيًا من خلال مساعدة البيئة أثناء غيابك. على سبيل المثال، حاول المشي، أو السفر بالحافلة والقطار، وأعِد تدوير القمامة كلما أمكن ذلك.



You want to take care of the environment and support local communities, so you are keen to learn more about eco-tourism. Next time you go on vacation, try out some eco-tourist activities like wildlife watching, cycling, or snorkeling.

أنت تريد الاهتمام بالبيئة ودعم المجتمعات المحلية، لذا أنت حريص على معرفة المزيد عن السياحة البيئية. في المرة القادمة التي تذهب فيها في إجازة، جرب بعض أنشطة السياحة البيئية مثل مشاهدة الحياة البرية أو ركوب الدراجات أو الغوص بالقرب من سطح الماء.

You're a great eco-tourist! You like to explore new ways of traveling and do activities that don't damage the environment. Good for you!

أنت سائح بيئي رائع! أنت تحب استكشاف طرق جديدة للسفر والقيام بأنشطة لا تضر بالبيئة. هنيئًا لك!



Read and learn

A long journey رحلة طويلة


eagle


kingfisher


pelican


swift

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

تهاجر العديد من الطيور من وإلى مصر، وعبرها، بسبب موقعها في العالم. شمال أفريقيا أكثر حرارة من أوروبا، لذلك تغادر العديد من الطيور بلدان شمال أوروبا في فصل الشتاء وتطير إلى مصر وغيرها من الأماكن الأكثر دفئًا. وهذا يعني أن الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام تهاجر إلى مصر، مثل النسور والصقور وطيور السمامة.

Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

تهاجر العديد من الطيور المائية إلى مصر أيضًا. يمكنك في كثير من الأحيان رؤية أسراب كبيرة من الطيور مثل البجع بالقرب من المياه، على طول سواحل البحر الأحمر والبحر الأبيض المتوسط، وكذلك على ضفاف نهر النيل. هذه الطيور غالبًا ما تأكل الأسماك أو النباتات التي تعيش في الأنهار والبحيرات والواحات والبحار. تُعتبَر بحيرة قارون بالفيوم مكانًا جيدًا لمشاهدة طيور النحام (الفلامنجو).

Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go? They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

تطير بعض الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وتقوم بنفس الرحلة سنة بعد الأخرى. حتى الطيور الصغيرة التي تهاجر لأول مرة يبدو أنها تعرف كيفية الوصول إلى المكان الذي تحتاج إلى الوصول إليه. كيف تعرف هذه الطيور إلى أين تذهب؟ قد يستخدمون الشمس أو النجوم أو الأشياء التي يمكنهم رؤيتها في الطريق. لقد أمضى العلماء وقتًا طويلاً في محاولة معرفة كيفية قيامهم بذلك!

GRAMMAR STUDY

The first conditional [If] الحالة الأولي لـ

If + present simple ⟶ future simple

If + مضارع بسيط ⟶ will ('ll - won't) + inf. المصدر

- **We use the first conditional (If) (If + present simple + will + infinitive) to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.**
- نستخدم الحالة الأولي لـ (If) للحديث عن أشياء من المحتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

- If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it.
- If tourists stay in simple accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels.

- **The short form of (will) is ('ll). The short form of (will not) is (won't).**
- لاحظ أن: اختصار [will] هو ['ll] واختصار [will not] هو [won't].

- If I am hungry, I'll eat a snack.
- If he doesn't leave now, he won't catch the bus.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

eco-friendly - damage - eco-tourism - accommodation - protect

Eco-tourism is a good idea. If people learn more about the environment, they will want to ① .... it. If tourists take care of the places they visit, they will cause less ② .... to the environment. If tourists stay in simple, ③ .... accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels. If ④ .... is successful, it will create new jobs for the local people.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

environment - recycle - activities - eco-tourist - eco-tourism

If you prefer traditional vacations, you can still be an ① .... by helping the environment while you're away. For example, try to walk or travel by bus and train, and ② .... your trash whenever possible. If you want to take care of the ③ .... and support local communities, you should learn more about ④ ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

leave - falcons - hotter - swifts - migrate

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it. North Africa is ① .... than Europe, so in winter, many birds ② .... northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds ③ .... to Egypt, such as eagles, ④ ...., and swifts.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

find - journey - get - stars - sun

Some birds fly very long distances, making the same ① .... year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to ② .... to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go? They might use the ③ ...., the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to ④ .... out how they do this!

5 Choose the correct answer: (The first conditional If)

1. If you learn to bake, you (will - won't - would) save a lot of money.
2. If we (go - goes - went) to El-Agami beach this summer, I'll swim every day!
3. If people (don't learn - learn - learned) more about the environment, they will want to protect it.
4. If tourists stay in simple accommodation, there (won't - aren't - doesn't) be so many big hotels.
5. If I am hungry, I'll (ate - eating - eat) a snack.
6. If he (leaves - leave - doesn't leave) now, he won't catch the bus.
7. If tourists take care of the places they visit, they (won't - are - will) cause less damage to the environment.
8. If eco-tourism is successful, it will (created - create - creates) new jobs for the local people.
9. If she (has - have - had) an important exam next term, she will study for it.
10. If you go to bed late, you (will - won't - aren't) get up early.
11. If Omar plays too much, he won't (is - are - be) able to do his homework.
12. If he (feeling - feels - feel) thirsty, he will buy a bottle of juice.

6 Read the text and answer the questions:

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt and across it because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds, such as pelicans, near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Many water birds eat (coral reefs - fish - grass).
2. North Africa is (hotter - colder - cooler) than Europe.
3. The underlined word "large" means (little - small - big).

B Answer these questions:

3. What are the birds that migrate to Egypt?
▶ ....
4. Why do many birds migrate?
▶ ....

7 Complete the sentences:

Student's Book

1. If I .... (have) an important exam next term, I .... (study) for it.
2. If you .... (go) to bed late tonight, you .... (not / get up) early tomorrow.
3. If Omar .... (play) football for two hours, he .... (be) tired!
4. If she .... (feel) thirsty, she .... (drink) some water.
5. If we .... (not/ work) together, we .... (miss) the deadline!

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. If tourists .... (staying) in simple, eco-friendly accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels.
2. If eco-tourism .... (be) successful, it will create new jobs for the local people.
3. If I'm hungry, I .... (ate) a snack.
4. If he doesn't leave now, he won't .... (catches) the bus.
5. If people .... (learns) more about the environment, they will want to protect it.

6. If tourists take care of the places they visit, they .... (caused) less damage to the environment.

9 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. birds - Migrating - fly - distances - very long.

▶ ....

2. Egypt - in - important - is - Tourism.

▶ ....

3. Many birds - Egypt - and from - migrate to.

▶ ....

4. is - Why - eco-tourism - idea - a good?

▶ .... ?

5. to find - migrate - Many birds - hot - weather.

▶ ....

10 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Waleed:

Tell him about a science lesson you learned at school about the birds that migrate to Egypt. Tell him what those birds are, where they come from, and why. Your email address is maher@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is waleed@gmail.com.

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....,

....

....

....

................,

....

Lessons 4 5 Writing: A blog & Project



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



habitat بيئة - موطن طبيعي



blog مدونة



flood فيضان



drought جفاف

Project



scuba diving الغوص تحت الماء



Ras Mohammed National Park محمية رأس محمد



mountains جبال



Sinai Peninsula شبه جزيرة سيناء

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

desert	صحراء	planet	كوكب
forests	غابات	fires	حرائق
space	مساحة	locals	السكان المحليين
garden box	صندوق للزراعة بالحديقة	holiday	إجازة
insects	حشرات	sharks	أسماك القرش
wildlife	حياة برية	damaged	مدمّر

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

Welcome to my blog!	مرحبًا بكم في مدونتي!	**cut down trees**	يقطع الأشجار
look after	يعتني بـ	**drop litter**	يلقي القمامة
recycle paper	يعيد تدوير الورق	**make sure**	يتأكد
waste water	يهدر المياه	**plant flowers**	يزرع الورد
good for	مفيد لـ	**famous for**	مشهور بـ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
want	يريد	wanted	wanted
drop	يلقي	dropped	dropped
plant	يزرع	planted	planted
allow	يسمح	allowed	allowed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
write	يكتب	wrote	written
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
find	يجد	found	found
hurt	يجرح - يؤذي	hurt	hurt
cut down	يقطع	cut down	cut down

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

habitat : a place where an animal or plant lives





Read and learn



Home Archive Contact Pages Search

Hello, I'm Arwa – welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about something which I think is really important.

أهلًا، أنا أروى – مرحبًا بكم في مدونتي! أنا أكتب اليوم عن شيء أعتقد أنه مهم جدًا.



I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.

أعتقد أننا يجب أن نحاول جميعًا حماية الموائل (المَوَاطِن) الحيوانية. تحتاج الحيوانات إلى أماكن آمنة للعيش فيها والعثور على الطعام ورعاية أطفالها. إنها جزء من كوكبنا، لذا يجب علينا التأكد من أن الأشياء التي نقوم بها لا تؤذيها.

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife-watching holidays. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too. When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it.

هناك الكثير من الموائل المختلفة في مصر، مثل الصحراء والبحر والجبال والأنهار. إنه أمر جيد للجميع إذا قمنا بحماية هذه الموائل. على سبيل المثال، عندما يكون الموئل صحيًا، يمكن للعديد من الحيوانات أن تعيش في مكان واحد. ومع السياحة البيئية الجيدة، يمكن للناس أن يأتوا لقضاء إجازات لمراقبة الحياة البرية. وهذا أمر جيد بالنسبة لبلدنا وللناس أيضًا. عندما يتعرّف الناس على الحياة البرية، فإنهم يريدون حمايتها.



We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects. You don't need a lot of space – here's a garden box I made for my window!

يمكننا جميعًا التفكير في الأشياء التي يمكننا القيام بها لحماية الموائل. على سبيل المثال، يجب ألا نهدر الماء أو نلقي القمامة. يمكننا إعادة تدوير الورق، حتى لا يقطع الناس الأشجار. يمكننا أيضًا زراعة الزهور والنباتات، لأنها مفيدة للطيور والحشرات. أنت لا تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة لفعل ذلك - إليك صندوق الحديقة الذي صنعته لنافذتي!

Project

The Ras Mohammed National Park محمية رأس محمد الوطنية

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.

تُعَدُّ محمية رأس محمد الوطنية الواقعة على البحر الأحمر منطقة رائعة يمكن للسكان المحليين والسياح زيارتها. تشتهر هذه المنطقة الجميلة في شبه جزيرة سيناء بالحياة البحرية والمياه الدافئة والطقس المذهل. يأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم لممارسة الغوص القريب من سطح الماء والغوص العميق هنا.



You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird-watching.

يمكنك رؤية الشعاب المرجانية والكثير من الأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية، وربما أسماك القرش. هناك العديد من مظاهر الحياة البرية الأخرى أيضًا، وهي مكان رائع لمراقبة الطيور.

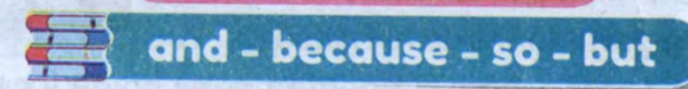


The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

الحديقة الوطنية محمية، ولكن يُسمح للناس بزيارتها. ولأنها جميلة جدًا، يأتي الكثير من الزوّار ويركبون القوارب أو يسبحون ويغوصون بالقرب من سطح الماء في البحر.

GRAMMAR STUDY

Conjunctions روابط



and - because - so - but

and و ▶▶▶ رابط يربط بين جملتين يعبران عن تتابع الأحداث أو معنى واحد أو أفكار متشابهة.

- We shouldn't cut down trees and we should take care of wild animals.
- Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies.

because (لأن) ▶▶▶ رابط يربط بين جملتين إحداهما سبب والأخرى نتيجة وتتبع بالسبب

- Animal habitats are damaged because there are floods, droughts, or fires.

so (لذلك) ▶▶▶ رابط يربط بين جملتين إحداهما سبب والأخرى نتيجة وتتبع بالنتيجة.

- There are floods, droughts, or fires, so animal habitats are damaged.

but (لكن) ▶▶▶ رابط يربط بين جملتين يعبران عن التناقض.

- The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit.

Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

planet – find – habitats – hurt – food

I'm writing today about something which I think is really important. I think we should all try to protect animal ① .... Animals need safe places to live, find ② ...., and look after their babies. They are part of our ③ ...., so we must make sure that the things we do don't ④ .... them.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

scuba – reefs – wildlife – locals – dive

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for ① .... and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba ② .... here. There are a lot of coral ③ .... and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other ④ ...., too, and it is a great place for bird-watching.

3 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. We can plant flowers and plants to (help - waste) animal habitats. SB
2. Animals need safe places to find (babies - food). SB
3. People can go on wildlife-(watching - changing) vacations. SB
4. There (aren't many - are lots of) things we can do to help animals. SB
5. A (tent - hotel - habitat) is a place where an animal or plant lives.
6. You can see coral (roofs - reefs - birds) and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks in that area.
7. Animals need safe places to live. We should all try to protect animal (vacations - holidays - habitats).
8. We can (rewrite - recycle - cycle) paper, so people don't cut down trees.
9. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba (drive - ride - dive) in the Red Sea.
10. In Egypt, there are many types of (tents - hotels - habitats). Lots of animals and plants live in them.

4 Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. We planted flowers (but - so - because) birds and insects can have more food.

2. We wanted to clean up the beach (because - so - but) there was trash on it.
3. This was a beautiful river, (so - because - but) there is pollution in it now.
4. We saw turtles, pelicans, (and - so - because) lizards when we went wildlife-watching.
5. We can recycle paper, (because - so - and) people don't cut down trees.
6. We can plant flowers and plants (so - because - but) these are great for birds and insects.
7. Eco-tourism is good for the country (because - and - so) for the people, too.
8. Animals need safe places to live, find food, (and - so - because) look after their babies.
9. Animals habitats are part of our planet, (because - so - and) we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.
10. There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, (but - and - so) rivers.
11. We can plant flowers (and - because - but) trees to help animal habitats.
12. People come from all over the world to snorkel (so - but - and) scuba dive in the Red Sea.

5 Complete these sentences with and, but, because, or so: Student's Book

1. We planted flowers .... birds and insects can have more food.
2. We wanted to clean up the beach .... there was trash on it.
3. This was a beautiful river, ... there is pollution in it now.
4. We saw turtles, pelicans, ... lizards when we went wildlife-watching.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. There are floods, droughts, or fires .... (because) animal habitats are damaged.
2. Animal habitats are damaged .... (so) there are floods, droughts, or fires.
3. We saw turtles, pelicans, ... (but) lizards when we went wildlife-watching.
4. Animal habitats are damaged, ... (because) animals don't have safe places to live, find food, or look after babies.

5. Animals don't have safe places to live, find food, or look after babies .... (and) animal habitats are damaged.
6. A habitat is safe and healthy, ... (but) lots of animals can live there.
7. Lots of animals can live in this habitat .... (so) this habitat is safe and healthy.
8. We planted flowers .... (but) birds and insects can have more food.
9. We recycle paper .... (because) trees aren't cut down.
10. Trees aren't cut down .... (so) we recycle paper.
11. We grow plants and flowers .... (and) birds and insects have food.
12. Birds and insects have food .... (so) we grow plants and flowers.
13. We wanted to clean up the beach .... (and) there was trash on it.
14. This was a beautiful river, ... (because) there is pollution in it now.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. different - are - in Egypt - There - habitats - lots of.

▶ ....

2. can see - You - coral reefs - lots of fish - and.

▶ ....

3. animals - for - bad - is - What?

▶ .... ?

4. wanted - We - to - the beach - clean up.

▶ ....

5. wildlife-watching - can - go on - People - vacations.

▶ ....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. who knows ras mohammed national park

▶ ....

2. in egypt, there are many types of habitats

▶ ....

3. what is a habitat

▶ ....



(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)



1 Read and complete the dialogue: (10Ms)

plans - real - similar - successful - careful

Malak : Injy, what does the proverb "The early bird catches the worm" mean?

Injy : Well, it means that if you want to be ① ...., you need to be the first to do something.

Malak : How about this one? "Birds of a feather flock together".

Injy : Maybe it mentions feathers because they all have similar feathers.

Malak : You mean they all look the same?

Injy : Yes. But here, it means that ② .... people like doing the same things.

Malak : Okay, here's a strange one! "Don't count your chickens before they hatch."

Injy : Maybe it's about being ③ .... before you know something will happen.

Malak : So you don't make too many ④ .... before something is ⑤ .... That's sensible.

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (10Ms)

1. sensible - careful - successful - help
2. snorkel - pollution - swim - climb
3. damage - nature - environment - wildlife
4. pelican - kingfisher - sail - flamingo
5. protect - similar - respect - migrate

3 Choose the correct answer: (10Ms)

1. People can (climb - drive - sail) on the Nile.
2. There are often large (blocks - flocks - clocks) of water birds near lakes and oases.
3. Eco-tourism is a good way for people to (respect - hurt - damage) nature.
4. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish, as well as (coral - care - careful) reefs.
5. Eco-tourism is more (harmful - terrible - sustainable) than traditional tourism.
6. If people learn more about the environment, they will (wants - want - wanted) to protect it.
7. If tourists (stay - stayed - staying) in simple, eco-friendly accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels.
8. The birds often must (flying - fly - flew) very long distances.
9. We (should - mustn't - must) waste water or drop litter.
10. The National Park is protected, (so - but - because) people are allowed to visit.



Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat, and people must protect it.

People who go bird-watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too close to the birds because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs!

Wildlife watching is ideal for people who respect nature, and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

A Answer these questions:

1. Who is wildlife watching ideal for?
   ▶ ....
2. Why mustn't people get too close to the birds?
   ▶ ....

3. How many species of birds in Egypt are there?

▶ ....

B Choose the correct answer:

4. People who go (fishing - bird-watching - skiing) in Egypt will have a lot to see.

5. Siwa (Sea - Lake - Oasis) is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (10Ms)

1. safe places - need - Animals - food - to find.

▶ ....

2. an - is - Egypt - country - amazing.

▶ ....

3. What - animals - is - for - bad?

▶ .... ?

4. Egypt - visit - Many people - and bird-watching - for wildlife.

▶ ....

5. to - migrate - continents - other - Eagles.

▶ ....

6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (10Ms)

"An eco-tourism vacation"

▶ Ideas to help you:

respect nature - traveling - watching animals – hiking – taking photos

....

....

....

....

....





1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. Adam loves visiting the (zoo - desert - club - park).
2. Adam saw lots of (coral reefs - fish - crocodiles - wildlife) when the sun went down.
3. They'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so they must bring a (bird - mat - tent - bed).
4. Many animals live on the (sand - water - river - sea) in the desert.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Siwa Oasis is an important habitat and people must (protect - hurt - harm - damage) it.
2. The (notebook - guidebook - test book - story book) gives tourists information about a place.
3. Many birds (recycle - migrate - snorkel - sail) to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather.
4. There are lots of different (tents - hotels - hospitals - habitats) in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

simple - sustainable - accommodation - Eco-tourism - pollution

① .... is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more ② .... than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple ③ ...., not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of ④ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Egypt is one of the most important tourist destinations in the world. Every winter, thousands of tourists from Europe, America and Asia come to spend their holidays in different parts of Egypt. They enjoy our fine weather, sunshine and nature. It's very cold in their countries.

Tourists from the Arab and African countries prefer to visit Cairo, Alexandria and other coastal towns in the summer. <u>They</u> also enjoy seeing our ancient treasures.

It is believed that whoever drinks from the water of the Nile will surely come back to Egypt again.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The weather in Egypt in winter is (colder - warmer - cooler - cloudier) than the weather in Europe.
2. Tourists who visit Egypt are (Arabs - Africans - Europeans - of all nationalities).
3. Arab and African tourists visit Egypt in the (winter - summer - fall - spring).

B Answer these questions:

4. What do tourists from Europe and America enjoy in Egypt?
5. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. more - have - Proverbs - meaning - than - one. ▶ ....
2. Where - birds - can - these - you - see? ▶ .... ?
3. is - a good - people - for - Eco-tourism - way - to do this. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2Ms)

1. You .... (mustn't) study the birds quietly from a safe place.
2. If you .... (learned) to bake, you will save a lot of money.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (3Ms)

- this beautiful area on the sinai peninsula is famous for its sea life

8 Write an email to your friend Esraa: (5Ms)

Tell him about a report you read about the benefits of eco-tourism. Tell her about the activities the eco-tourists can do and how is it useful to the environment. Your email address is mariam@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is esraa@school.net.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....................,
....



Unit 11

How can I help?

كيف يمكنني المساعدة؟

In this unit I will ....

- listen, read, research, and write about charity work and volunteering.
- use infinitives of purpose.
- read and understand three texts about mystery objects.
- listen to an interview about volunteering.
- use -ly and other adverbs.
- read and understand a story about two brothers.
- say words containing sh, ch, and tch.
- write a biography of a volunteer.
- create a leaflet about being a good citizen

Objectives

Vocabulary	**Volunteering and charity work:** donate, participate, support, volunteer, help out, starting up, donated, been kind to, look after, day center, confidence, fundraising, give back **Explaining technology:** controller,button, joystick
Language	- **Using -ly adverbs** - **Infinitives of purpose** Why?... To protect .... - **Talking about technology:** is this part? It's the part that goes over your ears.
Reading	- An article about a volunteer project - A story about two brothers - Read a text about mystery objects
Listening	- Articles about different volunteering projects - Listen to a dialog about how to use technology - An interview about volunteering
Speaking	- Talking about how we help at home Ask and answer questions about how things work
Writing	- Write a biography of a volunteer
Project	- Create a leaflet about being a good citizen
Pronunciation	**Digraphs and trigraphs:** sh, ch,tch
Life skills	- Talking about and describing - technology and how things work
Values	Being a good citizen
Issues and challenges	Volunteering and helping people



Lesson 1 Why do you want to help?



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



participate يشارك



donate يتبرع



support يدعم - يساند



volunteer (v) يتطوع



community مجتمع



kindergarten حضانة - روضة الأطفال



vegetable garden حديقة نباتية



neighbor جار

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

project	مشروع	safer	أكثر أمانًا
skills	مهارات	ideas	أفكار
organization	منظمة	local	محلي
minutes	دقائق	popular	مشهور
charity	مؤسسة خيرية	fresh vegetables	خضراوات طازجة
group	مجموعة	parents	الوالدين
person	شخص	stores	محلات

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

an after-school club	نادي ما بعد اليوم الدراسي
on Wednesdays	في أيام الأربعاء
get better at	يتحسن في
clean trash	ينظف القمامة
the younger children	الأطفال الأصغر
a bit nervous	متوتر قليلاً
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
support	يدعم - يساند	supported	supported
donate	يتبرع	donated	donated
participate	يشارك	participated	participated
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
join	يشترك - يلتحق	joined	joined
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered	volunteered
train	يتدرب	trained	trained
help	يساعد	helped	helped
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
paint	يرسم – يلون	painted	painted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
give	يعطي	gave	given
grow	يزرع	grew	grown
think	يعتقد- يفكر	thought	thought
teach	يعلم	taught	taught
feel	يشعر	felt	felt

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

support:	: to do things that help a particular person or group
participate:	: to take part in something
volunteer:	: to do a job or activity and not take any money for it
donate:	: to give something away to help a person or organization

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

There are charities all over the world that help people, animals, and the planet. They help with many different things, including education, health, culture and nature.

هناك جمعيات خيرية في جميع أنحاء العالم تساعد الناس والحيوانات والكوكب.إنهم يساعدون في العديد من الأشياء المختلفة، بما في ذلك التعليم و الصحة والثقافة والطبيعة.

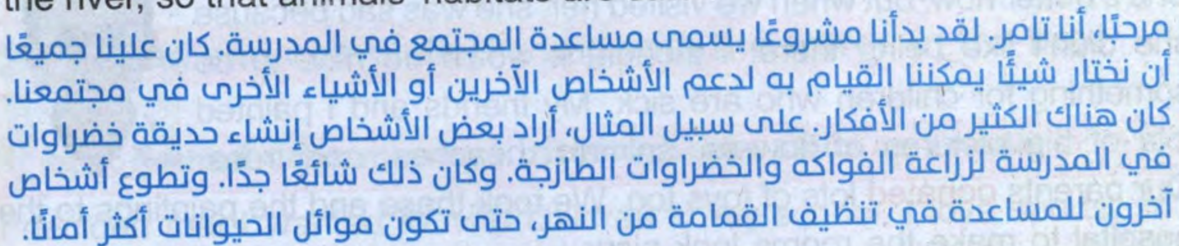




Read and learn

How often does Tamer volunteer?
كم مرة يتطوع تامر؟

Hi, I'm Tamer. At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to **support** other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular.
Other people **volunteered** to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.



مرحبًا، أنا تامر. لقد بدأنا مشروعًا يسمى مساعدة المجتمع في المدرسة. كان علينا جميعًا أن نختار شيئًا يمكننا القيام به لدعم الأشخاص الآخرين أو الأشياء الأخرى في مجتمعنا. كان هناك الكثير من الأفكار. على سبيل المثال، أراد بعض الأشخاص إنشاء حديقة خضراوات في المدرسة لزراعة الفواكه والخضراوات الطازجة. وكان ذلك شائعًا جدًا. وتطوع أشخاص آخرون للمساعدة في تنظيف القمامة من النهر، حتى تكون موائل الحيوانات أكثر أمانًا.

I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills. I was a bit nervous at first, but lots of children joined in and their parents were very happy. It was great to have so many children **participating**.

قررتُ أنني أريد مساعدة الأطفال في مدرستي. أنا أحب الرياضة، لذلك أنشأت ناديًا بعد المدرسة لتعليم الأطفال الصغار مهارات كرة القدم. كنتُ متوترًا بعض الشيء في البداية، ولكن انضم الكثير من الأطفال للنادي وكان آباؤهم سعداء للغاية. كان من الرائع أن يشارك هذا العدد الكبير من الأطفال.

I teach the class after school on Wednesdays. The class is for 45 minutes, and we train and play games. I like seeing the children get better at football, and it's really good fun, too.

أقوم بتدريس الفصل بعد المدرسة في أيام الأربعاء. مدة الفصل 45 دقيقة، ونحن نتدرب ونلعب الألعاب. أحب رؤية الأطفال وهم يتحسنون في كرة القدم، وهو أمر ممتع أيضًا.

Ideas for the Community Help Project
أفكار لمشروع المساعدة المجتمعية

Reem



I love reading, so I decided to help out in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by reading to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too. We're starting up a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.

أنا أحب القراءة، لذلك قررتُ المساعدة في صف روضة الأطفال أيام الخميس من خلال القراءة للأطفال. أُحبُّ قراءة القصص مع الأطفال الصغار، وهم يحبون ذلك أيضًا. نحن نبدأ مشروعًا حيث يفكرون في قصصهم الخاصة الأسبوع المقبل. أنا أتطلع إلى ذلك.

Ibrahim



My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents donated lots of toys too. We took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

كانت أختي الصغيرة مريضة الشهر الماضي وكانت في المستشفى. إنها أفضل الآن، ولكن عندما زرناها كانت حزينة لأنها لم تحب وجودها هناك. اعتقدتُ أنه سيكون من اللطيف أن أفعل شيئًا للأطفال المرضى. لقد رسمتُ أنا وأصدقائي الكثير من الصور الكبيرة للزهور والحيوانات والشواطئ والأشجار. كما تبرع آباؤنا بالكثير من الألعاب. أخذنا الألعاب واللوحات إلى المستشفى لجعل الغرف تبدو أجمل.

Mariam



My neighbor has always been kind to us. She used to help my mom look after me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go shopping. So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores and get it. I like to help her.

لطالما كانت جارتي لطيفة معنا. كانت تساعد أمي في الاعتناء بي عندما كنت أصغر سنًا. لقد كَبَرَت الآن بعض الشيء، وأصبح من الصعب عليها أحيانًا الذهاب للتسوُّق. لذلك أنا أسألها

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

participating - community - support - stories - volunteered

At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to ① .... other people or things in our ② .... There were lots of ideas. Some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. Other people ③ .... to help clean trash from the river, so animals' habitats are safer. Lots of children joined in an after-school club to learn football skills. It was great to have so many children ④ ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

joined - community - after-school - skills - nervous

I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an ① .... club to teach the younger children football ② .... I was a bit ③ .... at first, but lots of children ④ .... in and their parents were very happy. It was great to have so many children participating.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

after - kind - community - stores - shopping

My neighbor has always been ① .... to us. She used to help my mom look ② .... me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go ③ .... So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the ④ .... and get it. I like to help her.



4 Choose the correct answer:

1. To (support - waste - damage) means to do things that help a particular person or group.
2. To (donate - participate - look) means to take part in something.
3. To (participate - protect - volunteer) means to do a job or activity and not take any money for it.
4. To (protect - donate - respect) means to give something away to help a person or organization.
5. All of us will (participate - leave -make) in the volunteer event.
6. I looked (before - like - after) my neighbors' pet cat when they went on vacation.
7. At school, we started (out - up - to) a project called Community Help.
8. My mom sometimes helps (on - out - for) at the school library.
9. A (volunteer - doctor - nurse) does a job or activity and doesn't take any money for it.
10. We should (participate - support - grow) poor and weak people in our community.
11. My neighbor has always been (kind - unhappy - unkind) to us. She used to help my mom.
12. Our parents (helped - wasted - donated) lots of paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.
13. It's very important to be kind (too - at - to - for) your neighbors.
14. The boys (volunteered - bought - painted) to help their community. They didn't take any money.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. will - a local - We - start up - charity - children's

▶ ....

2. people - some - want to - What - grow - did?

▶ .... ?

3. kind to - always - Our - been - has - us - neighbor.

▶ ....

4. often - does - volunteer - Tamer - How?

▶ .... ?

5. lots of - I - big - painted - pictures.

▶ ....

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. who did tamer want to help

▶ ....

2. i teach the class after school on wednesdays

▶ ....

3. we train and play games on fridays

▶ ....

7 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Basma:

Tell her what you and the volunteers in your community do to help your neighborhood be cleaner and more beautiful, and what they do to produce its needs of food. Your email address is farida@hotmail.com. And your friend's email address is basma@gmail.com.

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....,

....

....

....

.................,

....



Lesson 2 We use this to pick up the trash



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



nature camera كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة



multi-grip قبضة متعددة الاستخدامات



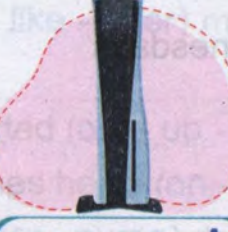
grabber أداة التقاط



handle مقبض



joystick عصا التحكم



game console وحدة التحكم للعبة



controller جهاز التحكم



button زر



day center مركز نهاري



install يثبت - يركب



film (v) يصور فيديو - يُعِد فيلمًا



record يُسجِل

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

wildlife	الحياة البرية	**exhibition**	معرض
fingers	أصابع اليد	**sunglasses**	نظارة شمسية
market	سوق	**gloves**	قفازات
metal	معدن	**app**	تطبيق
part	جزء	**action buttons**	أزرار الإجراءات

essay	مقالة	home button	زر الصفحة الرئيسة
photocopy paper	ينسخ ورق	menu	قائمة

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

do a beach clean-up	نقوم بتنظيف الشاطئ	at the top	في القمة
pick up the trash	يلتقط القمامة	at night	ليلًا
on the ground	علي الأرض	do math	إجراء العمليات الحسابية
play a video game	يلعب لعبة ڤيديو	turn on the radio	يشغل الراديو
watch TV	يشاهد التليفزيون	take off	ينزع – يخلع
swim under water	يسبح تحت الماء	easy to use	سهل الاستخدام

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
open	يفتح	opened	opened
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
close	يغلق	closed	closed
squeeze	يضغط	squeezed	squeezed
drop	يلقي	dropped	dropped
record	يسجل	recorded	recorded
film	يصور ڤيديو	filmed	filmed
install	يثبت	installed	installed
press	يضغط	pressed	pressed
move	يحرك	moved	moved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
show	يظهر	showed	shown
say	يقول	said	said
hold	يمسك	held	held
put	يضع	put	put
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
send	يرسل	sent	sent
do	يفعل	did	done
take off	ينزع - يخلع	took off	taken off
tell	يخبر	told	told

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

button	: is something you press to make something happen
joystick	: is something you can move in different directions to control a computer game
controller	: is something we use to play a computer game



Read and learn



Tamim
grabber



When we do a beach clean-up, we wear gloves to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And look! We use this to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hands.

تميم
مُلتقِط

عندما نقوم بتنظيف الشاطئ، نرتدي قفازات لتنظيف أيدينا. ونحمل أكياسًا سوداء للقمامة التي نجمعها. وانظروا! نحن نستخدم هذا لالتقاط القمامة. إن استخدامها ممتع للغاية. إنها

عصا معدنية طويلة بإصبعين في نهايتها. تفتح الأصابع وتغلق عند الضغط على المقبض الموجود في الأعلى. تقوم بفتح وغلق الأصابع لالتقاط القمامة، ثم نضعها في الكيس. تقول أمي أنه أفضل من التقاط الأشياء بيديك.

Dalida

multi-grip



I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use this to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top. Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.

داليدا

قبضة متعددة

أنا متطوع في مركز نهاري لكبار السن. بعض كبار السن لا يستطيعون فتح الزجاجات والبرطمانات، وذلك لأن أيديهم لا تكون قوية بما فيه الكفاية. لذلك يستخدمون هذه الأداة لفتح الأغطية. هذه هي طريقة استخدامها. أمسك البرطمان بيد واحدة وضع الأداة في الأعلى. أمسك هذا الجزء بيدك الأخرى، ثم قم بلفّه. إن استخدامها سهل للغاية. أحب أن أريها للناس في المركز النهاري.

Hamza

nature camera



We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two of these in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we record how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

حمزة

كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة

نحن نقوم بتنفيذ مشروع للحياة البرية في المدرسة، وقام معلمي بتركيب اثنين من هذه الكاميرات في الغابة. نحن نستخدمها لتصوير الحياة البرية. لقد وضع واحدة على الأرض لتصوير الحيوانات في الليل، ووضع الأخرى في شجرة لتصوير الطيور أثناء النهار. وبعد ذلك نسجل عدد الحيوانات والطيور التي نراها وماذا تفعل. إنه أمر مثير للاهتمام. لقد تعلمنا الكثير!

Do you think Amira's mom has played a video game before? هل تعتقد أن والدة أميرة لعبت لعبة فيديو من قبل؟

Mom : Hi Amira. Is this your new games console? It looks great. What's this part for?

الأم : مرحبًا يا أميرة. هل هذه وحدة تحكم الألعاب الجديدة الخاصة بكِ؟ تبدو رائعة. ما وظيفة هذا الجزء؟

Amira : Oh, that's the controller. It's what you use to play the game.

أميرة : أوه، هذا زرّ التحكّم. هذا ما تستخدميه للعب اللعبة.

Mom : Cool! And what does this do?

الأم : رائع! وماذا يفعل هذا؟

Amira : That's the home button. When you press it, it takes you back to the menu.

أميرة : هذا زر الصفحة الرئيسية. عندما تضغطين عليه يعود بكِ إلى القائمة.

Mom : OK. And what are these buttons for?

الأم : حسنًا. وما وظيفة هذه الأزرار؟

Amira : Those are the action buttons. You use them to tell your character to run, jump, or do other actions.

أميرة : تلك هي أزرار الحركة. تستخدمينها لإخبار الشخصية التي تلعبين بها بالجري أو القفز أو القيام بحركات أخرى.

Mom : And what are these parts for?

الأم : وما هي وظيفة هذه الأجزاء؟

Amira : They're the joysticks. They help you move your character around.

أميرة : إنها عِصِيّ التحكم. إنها تساعدكِ على تحريك الشخصية التي تلعبين بها.

Mom : OK. So, the home button takes you to the menu, and the buttons and joysticks are for playing the game.

الأم : حسنًا. إذن زر الصفحة الرئيسية يأخذك إلى القائمة، والأزرار وعِصِيّ التحكم مخصصة للعب اللعبة.

Amira : That's right. Do you want to play a game with me?

أميرة : هذا صحيح. هل تريدين لعب لعبة معي؟

GRAMMAR STUDY

Infinitives of purpose استخدام المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض (to + infinitive)

- **We use to + a verb in the base form to explain why we do something.**
- **نستخدم (المصدر + to) لنفسر لماذا نقوم بشيء ما.**

○ We wear gloves to protect our hands.

- **We use also to + base form verb to answer questions with why.**
- **أيضًا يمكن استخدام (المصدر + to) للإجابة على السؤال البادئ بـ (Why).**

○ Why do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up?

▶ To protect my hands.

- **لاحظ أنه أيضًا يمكن استخدام (جملة تامة + because) للإجابة على السؤال البادئ بـ (Why).**

○ Why do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up?

▶ Because I want to protect my hands.

○ Why did you buy a new game console?

▶ Because the old one was broken.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

film – nature – cameras – record – installed

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher ① .... two of the nature ② .... in the forest. We're using them to ③ .... wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we ④ .... how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

grabber – handle - gloves – trash - stick

When we do a beach clean-up, we wear ① .... to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And we use a ② .... to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use. It's a long metal ③ .... with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the ④ .... at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hands.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

jar – day – top – multi-grip – center

I volunteer at a day ① .... for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use a ② .... to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the ③ .... Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the ④ .... center.

4 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. The (multi-grip - controller - grabber) is what you use to play the game.
2. The (joysticks - multi-grip - camera) help you move your character around.
3. The buttons and joysticks are for playing a (sport - game - toy).
4. When you press the (home - grabber - multi-grip) button, it takes you back to the menu.
5. We're using the nature cameras to (photo - draw - film) wildlife.
6. We use the (nature camera - multi-grip - grabber) to pick up the trash.



7. We use the (grabber - multi-grip - nature camera) to take off the tops of glass bottles.
8. People use the (multi-grip - nature camera - sunglasses - grabber) to film wildlife.
9. We wear (hats - helmets - gloves) to protect our hands.
10. A (joystick - button - grabber) is something you can move in different directions to control a computer game.
11. A (button - game - screen) is something you press to make something happen.
12. The home button takes you to the (menu - list - book).
13. We (collect - connect - communicate) trash in black bags.
14. A grabber is a long metal (joystick - button - stick) with two fingers at the end.
15. We pick up the trash, then we (drop - clean - draw) it in the black bags.

5 Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. I bought a card (to - for - because) send to my grandma.
2. My uncle went to Cairo to (visit - visiting - visited) a friend.
3. We carry black bags to (collect - collecting - collected) the trash.
4. Mom is using an app because (learn - she's learning - learns) French.
5. (Who - Why - How) did you go to the sports center? ▶ To play volleyball.
6. You open and close the fingers to (picking - pick - picks) up the trash.
7. Nesma is wearing sunglasses (to - for - because) it's sunny today.
8. We're using nature cameras to (films - filmed - film) wildlife.
9. The controller is what you use to (play - played - playing) the game.
10. You use the action buttons to (tell - told - telling) your character to run, jump, or do other actions.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I bought a card to .... (sending) to my grandma.
2. We carry black bags .... (because) collect the trash.
3. Nesma wears sunglasses to .... (protected) her eyes.
4. My uncle went to Cairo .... (too) visit a friend.
5. Mom is using an app to .... (learned) French.
6. A: Why do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up?

   B: .... (Protect) my hands.
7. We took a taxi .... (to arriving) at work early.
8. We're using nature cameras .... (because) film wildlife.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. Lama - put - painted - to - a picture - the exhibition - in. SB

   ▶ ....
2. lemonade - to - the market - in - They - sell - make. SB

   ▶ ....
3. by bus - her cousins - see - Farah - to - traveled. SB

   ▶ ....
4. some candy - bought - the movie - to - We - during - eat. SB

   ▶ ....
5. a game - you - to play - Do - with me - want?

   ▶ .... ?
6. a - wildlife - We're - doing - project.

   ▶ ....
7. do - the - a multi-grip - use - Why - old people?

   ▶ .... ?

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what are these parts for

▶ ....

2. i went to the sports center on monday

▶ ....

3. the teacher told hamza and his friends to do a project

▶ ....

4. is this your new games console amira

▶ ....

9 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Aya:

Tell her about the games you have at home, how do you play them and who plays with you. Your email address is arwa@gmail.com and your friend's email address is aya@yahoo.com.

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....,

....

....

....

....

....

..................,

....

Lesson 3 It's good to give back to the community

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





interview مقابلة



donations تبرعات



fundraising جمع التبرعات



charity مؤسسة خيرية



volunteering تطوع



teenagers المراهقين



confidence ثقة



socialize يتواصل اجتماعيًا



sparrow عصفور



jealous غيور - غيران



reward مكافأة



give back يُعيد

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

community	مجتمع	leader	قائد
trips	رحلات	parks	حدائق عامة
museums	متاحف	activities	أنشطة
timetable	جدول المواعيد	diet	نظام غذائي

Lesson 3

citizen	مواطن	experience	خبرة
life skills	مهارات حياتية	advice	نصيحة
wing	جناح	food box	صندوق الطعام
village	قرية	garden	حديقة

Adjectives صفات

rewarding	مجزي - مفيد	difficult	صعب
healthy	صحي	young	صغير السن
interested	مهتم	old	كبير السن
injured	مصاب - مجروح	different	مختلف
thick	سميك	rich	غني
broken	مكسور	strong	قوي
alone	وحيد	huge	ضخم
helpful	متعاون	little	صغير

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

an after-school volunteer group	مجموعة تطوعية بعد المدرسة	go back	يعود
ever since	منذ ذلك الحين	share with	يشارك في
in a friendly way	بطريقة ودية	care for	يهتم بـ
fly away	يطير بعيدًا	look for	يبحث عن
full of gold and silver	مملوء بالذهب والفضة	advice for	نصيحة لـ
give a reward	يعطي مكافأة	look after	يعتني بـ

Pronunciation



The (sh), (ch)&(tch) sounds:

(sh)		(ch)		(tch)	
fish	سمكة	rich	غني	catch	يمسك
shoe	حذاء	chop	يقطع	watch	يشاهد
shop	محل – يتسوق	chip	رقاقة – شريحة	kitchen	مطبخ
sheep	خروف	chicken	دجاجة		
shirt	قميص	reach	يصل		
ship	سفينة	cheese	جبن		
cash	نقود				
wash	يغسل				
dishes	أطباق				
shell	صَدَفَة				

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered	volunteered
participate	يشارك	participated	participated
organize	ينظم	organized	organized
socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا	socialized	socialized
share	يشارك	shared	shared
care for	يهتم بـ	cared for	cared for
plant	يزرع	planted	planted
reply	يرد	replied	replied

Present		Past	PP
deliver	يرسل	delivered	delivered
reach	يصل	reached	reached
disappear	يختفي	disappeared	disappeared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
read	يقرأ	read	read
find	يجد	found	found
write	يكتب	wrote	written
become	يصبح	became	become
meet	يقابل	met	met
grow	يزرع	grew	grown
get	يحصل على	got	gotten
fly	يطير	flew	flown
give	يعطي	gave	given
break	يكسر	broke	broken
grow up	يكبر	grew up	grown up
catch	يصطاد	caught	caught

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

socialize	: spend time with people in a friendly way
confidence	: feeling sure about your abilities
fundraising	: collecting money for a charity
give back	: to help others because you have received so much
reward (n)	: something you get for doing a good job or being helpful
jealous	: feeling unhappy because someone has what you want

Listening Script

An interview with Rawan Ibrahim

مقابلة مع روان إبراهيم

Presenter : Today we are talking about volunteering in the community. And here is a community volunteer leader, Rawan Ibrahim. Rawan, welcome! Can you tell us how you started volunteering?

المقدم : نتحدث اليوم عن العمل التطوعيّ في المجتمع. وهذه هي قائدة المتطوعين المجتمعيين روان إبراهيم. روان، مرحبًا! هل يمكنكِ أن تخبرينا كيف بدأتِ العمل التطوعي؟

Rawan : I first started volunteering when I was 13 at an after-school volunteer group. I began by helping the younger children with their reading and writing. I loved working with them and I've volunteered ever since.

روان : بدأتُ العمل التطوعي لأول مرة عندما كان عمري 13 عامًا في مجموعة تطوعية بعد المدرسة. بدأتُ بمساعدة الأطفال الصغار في القراءة والكتابة. لقد أحببتُ العمل معهم وتطوعتُ منذ ذلك الحين.

Presenter : Since then, 16-year-old Rawan has participated in many school and community projects. Now, she volunteers in the Summer School Activity Group every summer. In the group. Rawan helps out with the children's activities, like sports events and trips to parks and museums. She also organizes the volunteers for fundraising activities. Rawan, how do you find time to do all these things?

المقدم : منذ ذلك الحين، شاركت روان البالغة من العمر 16 عامًا في العديد من المشاريع المدرسية والمجتمعية. وهي الآن تتطوع في مجموعة أنشطة المدرسة الصيفية كل صيف. في تلك المجموعة، تساعد روان في أنشطة الأطفال، مثل الأحداث الرياضية والرحلات إلى الحدائق والمتاحف. كما أنها تُنظّم المتطوعين لأنشطة جمع التبرعات. روان، كيف تجدين الوقت للقيام بكل هذه الأشياء؟

Rawan : It was hard at first, but I wrote a timetable to help me and then it was easy. And this year, I started volunteering with Food Box, a charity that delivers healthy meal boxes to families who need help. I became interested in Food Box because my mom volunteers there.

روان : كان الأمر صعبًا في البداية، لكني أعددتُ جدولًا زمنيًا ليساعدني، وبعد ذلك أصبح الأمر سهلاً. وهذا العام، بدأتُ العمل التطوعي مع مؤسسة "صندوق طعام"، وهي مؤسسة خيرية تقدم صناديق وجبات صحية للعائلات التي تحتاج إلى المساعدة. لقد أصبحتُ مهتمةً بمؤسسة "صندوق طعام" لأن والدتي متطوعة هناك.

Presenter : That's sounds like difficult, but rewarding work.

المقدم : يبدو هذا عملاً صعبًا ولكنه مجزٍ.

Rawan : Volunteering isn't like work. It's so much fun! At Food Box, I'm learning a lot about healthy food and what makes a healthy diet. I love delivering the food boxes and helping the children to be good citizens. Helping children makes me happy.

روان : العمل التطوعي ليس كالعمل العادي. إنه ممتع للغاية! في مؤسسة "صندوق طعام"، أتعلم الكثير عن الطعام الصحي وما الذي يجعل النظام الغذائي صحيًا. أحب توصيل صناديق الطعام ومساعدة الأطفال على أن يكونوا مواطنين صالحين. مساعدة الأطفال تجعلني أشعر بالسعادة.

Presenter : Thank you for sharing your experience with us. Do you have any advice for teenagers?

المقدم : شكرًا لكِ على مشاركة تجربتكِ معنا. هل لديكِ أي نصيحة للمراهقين ؟

Rawan : You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!

روان : إنكم تتعلمون العديد من المهارات الحياتية المهمة عندما تتطوعون. تتعلمون كيفية التواصل الاجتماعي والتحدُّث مع الأشخاص الذين لا تقابلونهم عادةً. كما يمنحك العمل التطوعي الثقة. إنه لأمر مدهش أن نرى كيف تتنامى ثقة المراهقين عندما يبدأون التطوُّع. يساعد جمع التبرعات المؤسسات الخيرية في الحصول على الأموال التي تحتاجها. من الجيد أن ترد الجميل للمكان الذي تعيش فيه. نصيحتي للمراهقين هي أن يتطوعوا ويساعدوا إذا استطاعوا. سوف تستمتعون بذلك!

Two Brothers, Two Rewards
شقيقان ومكافئتان

Once, there were two brothers who were very different. The older brother was the richest man in the village.
He was rich, but he always wanted more money. The younger brother wasn't rich, but he was kind and shared what he had with his friends.

One day, the younger brother found a bird with a broken wing. "Don't worry, little bird," he said. "I will look after you." He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, "You can fly away now." "First, I want to give you a ***reward****," said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me."*

The brother planted the seed and watched it grow into a huge plant with big, orange vegetables. When the brother cut one open, it was full of gold and silver! He was now the richest man in the village!

The older brother was ***jealous****. He went to his brother's house, and his brother told him about the bird. The next day, the older brother caught a* ***sparrow*** *and broke its wing. He said, "I'll look after you, then you can give me a reward." He looked after the bird, and when it was strong, he said, "Now I want my reward." The little bird replied, "Here is your reward. Plant this seed and look after it well."*

The older brother planted the seed, and soon a thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon. The brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward. But when he reached the moon, the plant disappeared. He was alone, and he couldn't go back.

The older brother didn't find any gold. So now, he looks down from the Moon, and watches his kind, younger brother living happily and helping others.

ذات مرة، كان هناك شقيقان مختلفان تمامًا. كان الأخ الأكبر أغنى رجل في القرية. لقد كان ثريًا، لكنه كان دائمًا ما يريد المزيد من المال. لم يكن الأخ الأصغر ثريًا، لكنه كان طيبًا ويشارك ما لديه مع أصدقائه.

في أحد الأيام، وجد الأخ الأصغر طائرًا مكسور الجناح. فقال: «لا تقلق أيها الطائر الصغير. سوف أعتني بك». لقد اعتنى بالطائر طوال فصل الشتاء، وعندما أصبح الطائر قويًا مرة أخرى، قال: «يمكنك الطيران مبتعدًا الآن.» فقال الطائر: «أولاً، أريد أن أعطيك مكافأة. ازرع هذه البذرة في حديقتك واعتني بها كما اعتنيت بي.»

زرع الأخ البذرة وشاهدها وهي تنمو لتصبح نبتةً ضخمةً بها خضراوات برتقالية كبيرة. وعندما فتح الأخ واحدة من تلك الخضراوات، كانت مليئة بالذهب والفضة! لقد أصبح الآن أغنى رجل في القرية!

كان الأخ الأكبر غيورًا. ذهب إلى بيت أخيه، فأخبره أخوه عن الطائر. في اليوم التالي، أمسك الأخ الأكبر بعصفور وكسر جناحه. وقال: «سوف أعتني بك، ثم يمكنك أن تعطيني مكافأة». واعتنى بالطائر، وعندما أصبح الطائر قوياً، قال: «الآن أريد مكافأتي». أجاب الطائر الصغير قائلًا: «تفضل مكافأتك. ازرع هذه البذرة واعتني بها جيدًا.»

زرع الأخ الأكبر البذرة، وسرعان ما نما نبات طويل وسميك وازداد طولًا حتى وصل إلى القمر. تسلق الأخ النبات ليبحث عن مكافأته، ولكن عندما وصل إلى القمر، اختفى النبات. لقد كان وحيدًا، ولم يتمكن من العودة.

لم يجد الأخ الأكبر أي ذهب. والآن هو ينظر من القمر إلى أسفل، ويشاهد أخيه الأصغر يعيش بسعادة ويساعد الآخرين.



GRAMMAR STUDY

The Adverb الظرف (الحال)

■ **We make most adverbs by adding (-ly) to the end of most adjectives.**

■ عادةً ما نحصل على الظرف بإضافة (**-ly**) لمعظم الصفات.

Adjective الصفة			Adverb الظرف (الحال)	
slow	بطيء	>>>>	slowly	ببطء
quick	سريع	>>>>	quickly	بسرعة
quiet	هادئ	>>>>	quietly	بهدوء
careful	حريص - حذر	>>>>	carefully	بحرص - بحذر
kind	طيب - عطوف	>>>>	kindly	بطيبة - بعطف
patient	صبور	>>>>	patiently	بصبر
beautiful	جميل	>>>>	beautifully	بشكل جميل
bad	سيء	>>>>	badly	بشكل سيء
sad	حزين	>>>>	sadly	بحزن
polite	مؤدب	>>>>	politely	بشكل مؤدب

Adjective	الصفة		Adverb	الظرف (الحال)
active	نشيط	>>>>	actively	بنشاط
amazing	مُذهل	>>>>	amazingly	بشكل مُذهل
real	حقيقي	>>>>	really	حقًا

- **If the adjective ends in (-y), then delete the (-y) and add (-ily):**
- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (**y**) تُحذف ثم نضيف (**ily**) للصفة.

Adjective	الصفة		Adverb	الظرف (الحال)
happy	سعيد	>>>>	happily	بسعادة
easy	سهل	>>>>	easily	بسهولة
angry	غاضب	>>>>	angrily	بغضب
hungry	جوعان	>>>>	hungrily	بنهم - بجوع

- **If the adjective ends in (-le), it becomes (-ly):**
- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (**le-**) تحول إلى (**ly-**).

Adjective	الصفة		Adverb	الظرف (الحال)
gentle	لطيف	>>>>	gently	بلطف
terrible	مريع - فظيع	>>>>	terribly	بشكل مريع

But there are some exceptions (Some adverbs are irregular).
ولكن يوجد بعض الصفات التي لا تنطبق عليها هذه القواعد (بعض الأحوال غير منتظمة).

- **The words "hard - fast" can be used as adjectives and as adverbs:**
- كلمتا (**fast** - **hard**) يمكن أن تستخدما كصفات وظروف.

Adjective	الصفة		Adverb	الظرف (الحال)
hard	صعب - صلب	>>>>	hard	بِجِد - بغزارة (للأمطار)
fast	سريع	>>>>	fast	بسرعة



■ **The adverb of the adjective "good" is "well":**

■ الظرف من الصفة (good) هو (well).

Adjective الصفة			Adverb الظرف (الحال)	
good	جيد	▶▶▶▶	well	بشكل جيد

Usage الاستخدام

■ **We use the adjective before a noun to describe it, but the adverb describes a verb. The adverb can come before or after a verb and its object. The adverb can't come between the verb and its object.**

■ الصفة تصف اسمًا وتأتي قبله بينما الظرف يصف فعلًا ويمكن أن يأتي قبل أو بعد (الفعل ومفعول الجملة) ولكنه لا يمكن أن يأتي بين (الفعل ومفعول الجملة).

- She quickly learned the rules. ▶ She learned the rules quickly.
- He is a careful driver. ▶ He drives carefully.
- She is a happy girl. ▶ She laughs happily.
- Their work is hard. ▶ They work hard.
- Tamer is a fast runner. ▶ Tamer runs fast.
- My sister is a good English speaker. ▶ My sister speaks English well.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

give - confidence - back - Fundraising - socialize

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to ① .... and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you ② .... It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. ③ .... helps charities get the money they need. It's good to ④ .... back to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is to volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

activities - Activity - fundraising - volunteers - participated

Rawan has ① .... in many school and community projects. Now, she ② .... in the Summer School Activity Group every summer. In the group, Rawan helps out with the children's ③ ...., like sports events and trips to parks and museums. She also organizes the volunteers for ④ .... activities.

3 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. To (volunteer - socialize - meet) means to spend time with people in a friendly way.
2. Volunteering gives us (confidence - money - sadness).
3. (Fundraising - Volunteering - Socializing) helps charities get the money they need.
4. I want to give you a (reward - review - world) because you came first.
5. Only (poor - rich - strong) people can buy expensive things.
6. Don't be (jealous - active - patient). Try to love all people.
7. A (dolphin - sparrow - goat) is a small, nice bird.

4 Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. Hoda isn't very (good - slow) at basketball but is getting better with practice! SB
2. Donia learned how to play chess (quick - well). SB
3. My friend Sherif plays volleyball very (good - well). SB
4. Gameela (gently - gentle) picked up the cat. SB
5. Nagwa and Lama played (happy - happily) in the park for an hour. SB
6. I ride my bike (slow - fast - quick).
7. I'm a (slowly - fastest - quick) rider.
8. At the end of the story, they all lived (good - happily - happy) ever after.
9. At the end of the story, they all were (happy - happily - nicely).
10. Norhan is always (quiet - quietly - loudly) in class.
11. Norhan always speaks (quiet - quietly - loud).
12. The teacher is shouting (loud - angry - angrily).

13. Younis hates playing tennis. He plays (bad - badly - good).
14. Dalia came first in the running race. She runs really (fast - quick - careful).
15. Sherif opened the door (quietly - quiet - loud) because his litt' ; brother was sleeping.
16. Maged's picture of a horse is excellent. He draws very (good - well - bad).

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Soha closed the window .... (quiet), as everyone was asleep. SB
2. Youssef is fantastic at football and plays very .... (good). SB
3. Mr Ibrahim waited .... (patient) for the train to arrive. SB
4. Fareeda plays the piano and the violin .... (beautiful). SB
5. Dalida volunteered .... (happy) at the children's day center. SB
6. Tarek saw his friend dropping litter and shouted .... (anger). SB
7. Magdi was late, so he ran .... (quick) to school.
8. My grandpa is a .... (patiently) man.
9. Gamal opened the window .... (quiet).
10. The tortoise is a .... (slowly) animal.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. advice - to - teenagers - My - is - volunteer - to. ▶ ....
2. a reward - I - want - you - to - give. ▶ ....
3. you - confidence - gives - Volunteering. ▶ ....
4. older - The - planted - the - brother - seed. ▶ ....
5. advice - Rawan's - for - What - teenagers - is? ▶ .... ?

7 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Things I learn from volunteering"

▶ Ideas to help you:

socialize - confidence - fundraising - give back

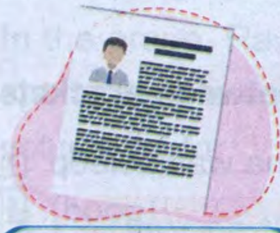
....
....
....
....
....




Lessons 4 5 Writing: A biography & Project



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس




biography سيرة ذاتية (قصة حياة شخص)



award جائزة رسمية



university جامعة



event حدث- مناسبة



fundraiser جامع تبرعات



leaflet منشور



youth شباب



leader قائد

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

communities	مجتمعات	charity	مؤسسة خيرية
neighbor	جار	citizen	مواطن
preparatory school	مدرسة إعدادية	social sciences	العلوم الاجتماعية
waste	نفايات	playground	ملعب
worker	عامل	rough draft	مسودة أولى
information	معلومات	headings	عناوين
section	قسم	project	مشروع

Adjectives صفات

polite	مهذب - مؤدب	interesting	شيق - ممتع
successful	ناجح	boring	ممل
elder	أكبر سنًا	local	محلي
sick	مريض	surprised	مندهش

Phrases & Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

was born in ولِدَت في	a team of volunteers فريق من المتطوعين
the date of birth تاريخ الميلاد	respect others يحترم الآخرين
a timeline of events جدول زمني للأحداث	in the correct order في الترتيب الصحيح
raise money يجمع الأموال	did a beach clean-up قامت بتنظيف الشاطئ
delivering food boxes تسليم صناديق الطعام	since then منذ ذلك الحين
runs a children's charity تدير جمعية خيرية للأطفال	organize a fund-raising event ينظم مناسبة لجمع التبرعات
do the shopping يقوم بالتسوق	do jobs يقوم بوظائف
reduce waste يقلل النفايات	recycle plastic bags يعيد تصنيع الأكياس البلاستيكية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
participate	يشارك	participated	participated
organize	ينظم	organized	organized

Term 2

Present		Past	PP
deliver	يرسل	delivered	delivered
study	تدرس	studied	studied
raise	يجمع	raised	raised
offer	يعرض	offered	offered
reduce	يقلل	reduced	reduced
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled	recycled
respect	يحترم	respected	respected
include	يشمل	included	included
divide	يقسم	divided	divided

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
do	يعمل	did	done
go	يذهب	went	gone
lead	يقود	led	led
run	يدير	ran	run
win	يفوز	won	won
make	يصنع	made	made
let	يترك	let	let
write	يكتب	wrote	written



Fareeda Hassan: A Biography
فريدة حسن: سيرة ذاتية

Early Life



Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994.

As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping.

بداية حياتها

وُلِدَت فريدة حسن في الإسكندرية عام 1994. عندما كانت طفلة، ساعدت فريدة والدتها في شراء مشتريات جيرانها الأكبر سنًا.

Volunteering at School

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.

العمل التطوعي في المدرسة

بدأت فريدة المدرسة الإعدادية في عام 2006. وفي هذه المرحلة شاركت في أول حدث تطوعي لها. حيث قامت هي وفريق من المتطوعين بتنظيف الشاطئ. في عام 2010، نظّمت أول حدث خيري لها لتوصيل صناديق الطعام للعائلات في المجتمع.

The University Years

In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here, she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground.

سنوات الجامعة

في عام 2012، التحقت فريدة بالجامعة لدراسة العلوم الاجتماعية. وفي هذه المرحلة، نظّمت حدثًا لجمع التبرعات لجمع الأموال من أجل إنشاء ملعب جديد.

Working in Charities

In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has helped many people. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

العمل في الجمعيات الخيرية

في عام 2017، بدأت فريدة وظيفتها الأولى كقائدة متطوعة مجتمعية في القاهرة. ومنذ ذلك الحين، ساعدت الكثير من الناس. وفي عام 2020، قادت مشروع «الشباب يرد الجميل» في ست مدن في مصر. لقد كان ناجحًا جدًا لدرجة أنها فازت بجائزة «العاملة المجتمعية لعام 2020». واليوم تدير مؤسسة خيرية للأطفال.

Tip!

When writing a biography, it helps to make a timeline of events, starting from the date of birth. Add important events and their dates to the timeline. This helps you organize the information in the correct order.
عند كتابة السيرة الذاتية، فإنها تساعد في وضع جدول زمني للأحداث ابتداءً من تاريخ الميلاد. أضف الأحداث المهمة وتواريخها إلى الجدول الزمني وهذا يساعدك على تنظيم المعلومات في الترتيب الصحيح.

Project

Ways to Be a Good Citizen طرق لتكون مواطنًا صالحًا

There are lots of ways you can volunteer to help your community.
هناك طرق عديدة يمكنك من خلالها التطوع لمساعدة مجتمعك.

Respect Others:



Be polite and kind to your neighbors. Help people who are old or sick. Call your neighbors to ask how you can help. You can offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home.

احترم الآخرين:

كن مهذبًا وطيبًا مع جيرانك. ساعد الأشخاص المسنين أو المرضى. اتصل بجيرانك واسألهم كيف يمكنك مساعدتهم. يمكنك عرض القيام بالتسوُّق أو القيام بالوظائف نيابة عنهم في المنزل.

Protect the Environment:



Reduce waste and help the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them. Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place!

احمِ البيئة:

قلّل من النفايات وساعد البيئة. لا تستخدم الأكياس أو الزجاجات البلاستيكية. إذا كان لديك زجاجات بلاستيكية في المنزل، قم بإعادة تدويرها. دعونا نكون جميعًا مواطنين صالحين ونجعل العالم مكانًا أفضل!

Help the Community:



Volunteer at a local charity event or help out on a community project. Volunteering isn't boring. It's interesting. You'll be surprised how much you enjoy it.

ساعِد المجتمع:

تطوَّع في حدث خيري محلي أو ساعد في مشروع مجتمعي. العمل التطوعي ليس مملاً. إنه شيِّق. سوف تُفاجأ بمدى استمتاعك به.

Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

award - charity - participated - community - event

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she ① .... in her first volunteer ② .... She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first ③ .... event delivering food boxes to families in the ④ ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

charity - project - volunteer - successful - award

In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a community ① .... leader in Cairo. Since then, she has helped many people. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so ② .... that she won the "2020 Community Worker" ③ .... Today, she runs a ④ .... for children.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Volunteering - shopping – neighbors - event - charity

To help the community, you should volunteer at a local ① .... event or help out on a community project. ② .... isn't boring. It's interesting. You'll be surprised how much you enjoy it. Respect Others. Be polite and kind to your ③ .... Help people who are old or sick. Call your neighbors to ask how you can help. You can offer to do their ④ .... or do jobs for them at home.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping. Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event, delivering food boxes to families in the community.

In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here, she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground. In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has helped many people. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Fareeda and a team of volunteers did a (street - beach - park) clean-up.
2. Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer (leader - reader - dealer) in Cairo.
3. The opposite of the underlined word "many" is (less - little - few).

B Answer these questions:

3. How did Fareeda help her neighbors when she was a child?
▶ ....
4. What did Fareeda study at university?
▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. started - Fareeda - school - in 2006 - preparatory.
   ▶ ....
2. could - to help - What - the environment - do - you?
   ▶ .... ?
3. to - do - shopping - You - offer - their - can.
   ▶ ....
4. his - Tarek - dropping - litter - saw - friend.
   ▶ ....

6 Write a biography of a person you know:

▶ **Write the information in date order.**

▶ **Include events with dates.**

▶ **Divide the information into sections.**

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)



1 Read and complete the dialogue: (10Ms)

jump - button - action - controller - menu

Mom : Hi Amira. Is this your new games console? It looks great. What's this part for?

Amira : Oh, that's the ① .... It's what you use to play the game.

Mom : Cool! And what does this do?

Amira : That's the home ② .... When you press it, it takes you back to the ③ ....

Mom : OK. And what are these buttons for?

Amira : Those are the ④ .... buttons. You use them to tell your character to run, ⑤ ...., or do other actions.

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (10Ms)

1. participate - support - volunteering - donate
2. day center - joystick - game console - controller
3. award - reward - prize - leaflet
4. camera - radio - control - TV
5. leader - fundraiser - worker - information

3 Choose the correct answer: (10Ms)

1. My teacher (participated - installed - supported) two nature cameras in the forest.
2. You should (volunteer - donate - spend) money to charities if you are rich.
3. A (controller - speaker - multi-grip) is something we use to play a computer game.

4. Children who (donate - participate - leave) in community activities usually have lots of fun!
5. When someone is (kind - generous - jealous), it means he feels unhappy because someone has what he wants.
6. Nesma wears sunglasses (to - because - for) protect her eyes.
7. My uncle went to Cairo to (visits - visited - visit) a friend.
8. The boys ran (quick - slow - quickly) because they were late.
9. We use the paintings to (make - made - makes) the rooms look nicer.
10. I heard two people shouting (angrily - angry - hungry) in the street today.

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

I'm Magdi. My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents donated lots of toys, too. We took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

A Answer these questions:

1. Where was Magdi's sister last month?
   ▶ ....
2. Was his sister happy there?
   ▶ ....
3. Who painted lots of big pictures?
   ▶ ....

B Choose the correct answer:

4. Magdi's little sister was (naughty - happy - sick) last month.
5. Their parents (donated - sold - bought) lots of toys.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (10Ms)

1. loves - Nada - volunteer - events - in - to participate.
   ▶ ....
2. Lama - to put - painted - a picture - the exhibition - in.
   ▶ ....
3. does - the - do - charity - What - Food Box?
   ▶ .... ?
4. quickly - ran - to - school - She - very.
   ▶ ....
5. did - How - her - help - neighbors - Fareeda?
   ▶ .... ?

6 Write an email to your friend Maged: (10Ms)

Invite him to visit you in the next summer holiday and suggest some voluntary activities that you can do together. Your email address is ashraf@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is maged@school.net.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,

....

....

....

....

................,

....







1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. Fareeda Hassan was born in (Cairo - Aswan - Alexandria - Tanta) in 1994.
2. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in (four - five - six - seven) cities in Egypt.
3. She won the "2020 Community (Player - Worker - Teacher - Farmer)" award.
4. Today, Fareeda Hassan runs a charity for (women - girls - men - children).

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. To take part in something means to (support - donate - participate - volunteer).
2. We use a (bin - grabber - nature camera - multi-grip) to pick the trash.
3. (Fundraising - Volunteering - Confidence - Vacation) helps charities get the money they need.
4. Everyone of us should (protect - volunteer - reduce - socialize) waste and help the environment.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

volunteering – diet – reward – writing – citizens

Volunteering isn't like work. It's so much fun! At Food Box, I'm learning a lot about healthy food and what makes a healthy ① .... I love delivering the food boxes and helping the children to be good ② .... Helping children makes me happy. I first started ③ .... when I was 13 at an after-school volunteer group. I began by helping the younger children with their reading and ④ .... I loved working with them and I've volunteered ever since.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

When you volunteer, you learn life skills while having fun and helping others. Volunteering means working together to make things better. It also helps you make new friends and socialize.

Socializing is like chatting and playing with others. This makes you feel good and builds confidence. When you have confidence, it means you believe in yourself. So, by volunteering, you not only help the community but also become a superhero with awesome life skills, making life more exciting and enjoyable.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The main idea of the text is (volunteering - skill - community - confidence)
2. The underlined word "it" refers to (volunteering - socializing - working together - confidence).
3. Volunteering helps you make new (relatives - friends - neighbor - classmates).

B Answer these questions:

4. What do we learn from volunteering? ▶ ....
5. What does the word "confidence" mean? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. to - brother's - He - house - his - went. ▶ ....
2. children - does - she - Why - like - helping? ▶ .... ?
3. wear - We - protect - gloves - to - our hands. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2Ms)

1. Dalia was late, so she ran to school very .... (quick).
2. I bought a card .... (too) send to my grandma.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- fareeda hassan was born in alexandria ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

▶ Ideas to help you: **"My dad's biography"**

early life - school and university - his work and job now

....

....

....

Term 2



Review 4 based on units (10 - 11)



Listing Script



Reader : I love going on vacation, but I think eco-tourism is a more sustainable way to travel. We learned about it in geography today and our teacher explained it really well. For example, you mustn't throw litter on beaches because this can make animals sick. I love watching birds and other animals in their natural habitats. However, people mustn't get too close to the birds, because it can make them frightened. It's important to speak and move quietly when you are near wildlife. I think people must be careful (not to damage) the environment when they travel.

القارئ : أُحِب الذهاب في إجازة، ولكن أعتقد أن السياحة البيئية هي وسيلة أكثر استدامة للسفر. لقد تعلمنا عنها في الجغرافيا اليوم وشرحها معلمنا بشكل جيد جدًا. على سبيل المثال، يجب عليك ألا ترمي القمامة على الشواطئ لأن ذلك قد يؤدي إلى إصابة الحيوانات بالأمراض. أُحِب مشاهدة الطيور والحيوانات الأخرى في بيئتها الطبيعية، ومع ذلك، يجب على الناس ألا يقتربوا كثيرًا من الطيور، لأن ذلك قد يجعلها خائفة. من المهم التحدُّث والتحرُّك بهدوء عندما تكون قريبًا من الحياة البرية. أعتقد أنه يجب على الناس توخي الحذر لكي لا يضروا بالبيئة عندما يسافرون



Narrator : 1

Reader A : This is our community garden, where we plant seeds to grow fruit and vegetables. The fruit and vegetables are then shared with people in the local area who can't buy or grow on their own.



الراوي : 1

القارئ أ : هذه هي حديقتنا المجتمعية حيث نزرع البذور لتكون فاكهة وخضروات. يتم بعد ذلك مشاركة الفاكهة والخضروات مع الأشخاص الذين لا يستطيعون شراءها أو زراعتها في المنطقة المحلية.

Narrator : 2

Reader B : A good way to help children who are in hospital is to read with them. Not only is it fun for them, but it can actually help them to feel better.



الراوي : 2

القارئ ب : إحدى الطرق الجيدة لمساعدة الأطفال الموجودين في المستشفى هي القراءة معهم. فهذا ليس ممتعًا بالنسبة لهم فحسب، ولكنه يمكن أن يساعدهم بالفعل على الشعور بالتحسن.

Narrator : 3

Reader C : Last year, we started a "plant a tree" project for our local park. Every new tree has sponsors. The sponsors are people who pay some money to help look after the tree. The more sponsors we have, the more trees we can plant. This year, we can buy lots of trees because we did so well last year!



الراوي : 3

القارئ ج : في العام الماضي، بدأنا مشروع "ازرع شجرة" لمنتزهنا المحلي. كل شجرة جديدة لها راعٍ. الرعاة هم الأشخاص الذين يدفعون بعض المال للمساعدة في رعاية الشجرة. كلما زاد عدد الرعاة لدينا، كلما زاد عدد الأشجار التي يمكننا زراعتها. هذا العام يمكننا شراء الكثير من الأشجار لأننا قمنا بعمل جيد جدًا العام الماضي!

Narrator : 4

Reader D : When you volunteer at a food bank, you can sort or make food for people who don't have enough to eat. It's a great way to help others, and volunteering for a charity like this can be good for your well- being, too.



الراوي : 2

القارئ ب : عندما تتطوع في بنك طعام، يمكنك فرز الطعام أو إعداده للأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم ما يكفيهم من الطعام. إنها طريقة رائعة لمساعدة الآخرين، كما أن التطوع في مؤسسة خيرية كهذه يمكن أن يكون مفيدًا لسلامتك النفسية أيضًا.







Read and learn





The Little Red Hen

الدجاجة الحمراء الصغيرة



Once upon a time there was a little red hen who really liked to work. Every day she planted seeds in her beautiful garden, and waited for her plants to grow. She had three great friends: a mouse, a cat, and a dog, but all three of them were very lazy!

في يوم من الأيام، كان هناك دجاجة حمراء صغيرة تحب العمل جدًا. كانت تزرع البذور في حديقتها الجميلة كل يوم، وتنتظر حتى تنمو نباتاتها. وكان لديها ثلاثة أصدقاء رائعين: فأر وقطة وكلب، لكن ثلاثتهم كانوا كسالى للغاية!

One day, the little red hen was really tired, so she asked the mouse, the cat, and the dog to help her plant some wheat.

في أحد الأيام، كانت الدجاجة الحمراء الصغيرة متعبة للغاية، فطلبت من الفأر والقطة والكلب مساعدتها في زراعة بعض القمح.

They all said "No!" A month later, the wheat grew tall and the hen wanted to cut the wheat. She asked the mouse, the cat and the dog. "Can you help?"

فقالوا جميعًا "لا!" وبعد شهر، أصبح القمح طويلًا وأرادت الدجاجة قطع القمح. فطلبت من الفأر والقطة والكلب "هل يمكنكم المساعدة؟"

They all said "No!" When she cut the wheat, the hen wanted to make some flour, but all three animals refused to help.

فقالوا جميعًا "لا!" عندما قطعت القمح، أرادت الدجاجة أن تصنع بعض الدقيق، لكن الحيوانات الثلاثة رفضوا مساعدتها.

Finally, when the hen finished all her work, she felt very hungry and she decided to bake a big chocolate cake. No one wanted to help her bake the cake, but when the mouse, the cat, and the dog smelled the delicious cake, they wanted to eat it with the hen! "Can we help you eat the cake, please, Hen?"



أخيرًا، عندما أنهت الدجاجة كل عملها، شعرت بالجوع الشديد وقررت خَبْز كعكة شوكولاتة كبيرة. لم يرغب أحد في مساعدتها في خَبْز الكعكة، ولكن عندما شمّ الفأر والقطة والكلب رائحة الكعكة اللذيذة، أرادوا أكلها مع الدجاجة! "هل يمكننا مساعدتكِ في تناوُل الكعكة من فضلكِ يا دجاجة؟"

A famous Egyptian ruler



حاكم مصري شهير

Ramses II was a great Egyptian King. When he was very young, his father Sethi became the Pharaoh of Egypt. Later on, when he was around 10, young Ramses helped his father rule the country.



كان رمسيس الثاني ملكًا مصريًا عظيمًا. عندما كان صغيرًا جدًا، أصبح والده سيثي فرعون مصر. وبعدها، وعندما كان في العاشرة من عمره، ساعد رمسيس الصغير والده في حكم البلاد.

By the time he was 20 years old, Ramses was a great soldier. In 1290 BCE, he became Pharaoh and leader of the Egyptian armies.

عندما بلغ رمسيس العشرين من عمره، كان جنديًا عظيمًا. وفي عام 1290 قبل الميلاد، أصبح فرعونًا وقائدًا للجيوش المصرية.

He won many battles and every time he won, Ancient Egypt got more land and became bigger and more powerful.

لقد انتصر في العديد من المعارك، وفي كل مرة انتصر فيها، حصلت مصر القديمة على المزيد من الأراضي وأصبحت أكبر وأقوى.



One of the most famous battles was the Battle of Kadesh in 1279 BCE. Ramses won and became a hero.

ومن أشهر المعارك التي انتصر فيها معركة قادش عام 1279 قبل الميلاد. انتصر رمسيس وأصبح بطلًا.

However, sixteen years later, Ramses made peace with his Hittite neighbors. He was the first ruler ever to sign a written peace treaty. Ramses liked building splendid monuments. His most famous temple is the one at Abu Simbel, where you can see four enormous statues of him at the entrance.

ومع ذلك، بعد ستة عشر عامًا، عقد رمسيس سلامًا مع جيرانه الحيثيين. وكان أول حاكم على الإطلاق يوقع معاهدة سلام مكتوبة. كان رمسيس يحب بناء الآثار الرائعة، ومعبده الأكثر شهرة هو معبد أبو سمبل، حيث يمكنك رؤية أربعة تماثيل ضخمة له عند المدخل.

Ramses II lived to be about 90 years old. When he died around 1233 BCE, he was first buried in the Valley of the Kings, but today Ramses's Mummy is in the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization.

عاش رمسيس الثاني حوالي 90 عامًا. وعندما تُوفي حوالي عام 1233 قبل الميلاد، تم دفنه أول مرة في وادي الملوك، ولكن اليوم توجد مومياء رمسيس في المتحف القومي للحضارة المصرية.



Test 12 on Units 10 - 11

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. Egypt is an amazing (town - city - country - village).
2. People can go (swimming - diving - snorkeling - relaxing) in the Red Sea.
3. People can go on a (valley - desert - sea - mountain) safari.
4. (Eco-tourist - Eco-tourism - Tourism - Tourist) is becoming very popular, too.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. When people (close - respect - damage - take) the environment, they want to protect it.
2. Many birds (mean - hatch - make - migrate) to find warmer weather in winter.
3. I think it's very important to be (unkind - cruel - bad - kind) to animals.
4. I want to give you a (review - world - reward - sadness) because you came first.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

starting up - reading - help out - forward - backward

I love reading, so I decided to ① .... in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by ② .... to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too. We are ③ .... a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking ④ .... to that.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Ahmed Zewail, the famous Egyptian scientist, won the Nobel Prize in October 1999. In 1997, he discovered the Femto second. He was also the first one to use a laser in finding out more and more about chemicals. So, his work helps scientists to produce new and useful medicines for curing diseases. Zewail was also awarded the "Nile Necklace" here in Egypt. Dr Zewail is now dead, but his works will last forever.

The Femto second, the laser, the computer, the telephone, the TV and many other inventions and discoveries have made our lives easier and more comfortable.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Dr Zewail is (American - English - Egyptian - French).
2. Dr Zewail discovered the (laser - Femto Second - medicines - chemicals).
3. He won the Nobel Prize in (1997- 1998 - 1999 - 2000).

B Answer these questions:

4. How do Dr Zewail's discoveries help scientists? ▶ ....
5. Where was Dr Zewail awarded the "Nile Necklace"? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. of a feather - Birds - together - flock. ▶ ....
2. birds - to and from - Many - Egypt - migrate. ▶ ....
3. reading - short - I - stories - love. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2Ms)

1. You .... (must) leave trash on beaches.
2. Youssef is fantastic at football and plays very .... (good).

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

○ i love reading ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"Reading"

▶ Ideas to help you:

- Your favorite hobby.
- Where you practice it.
- How often you practice it.
- Why it is interesting.

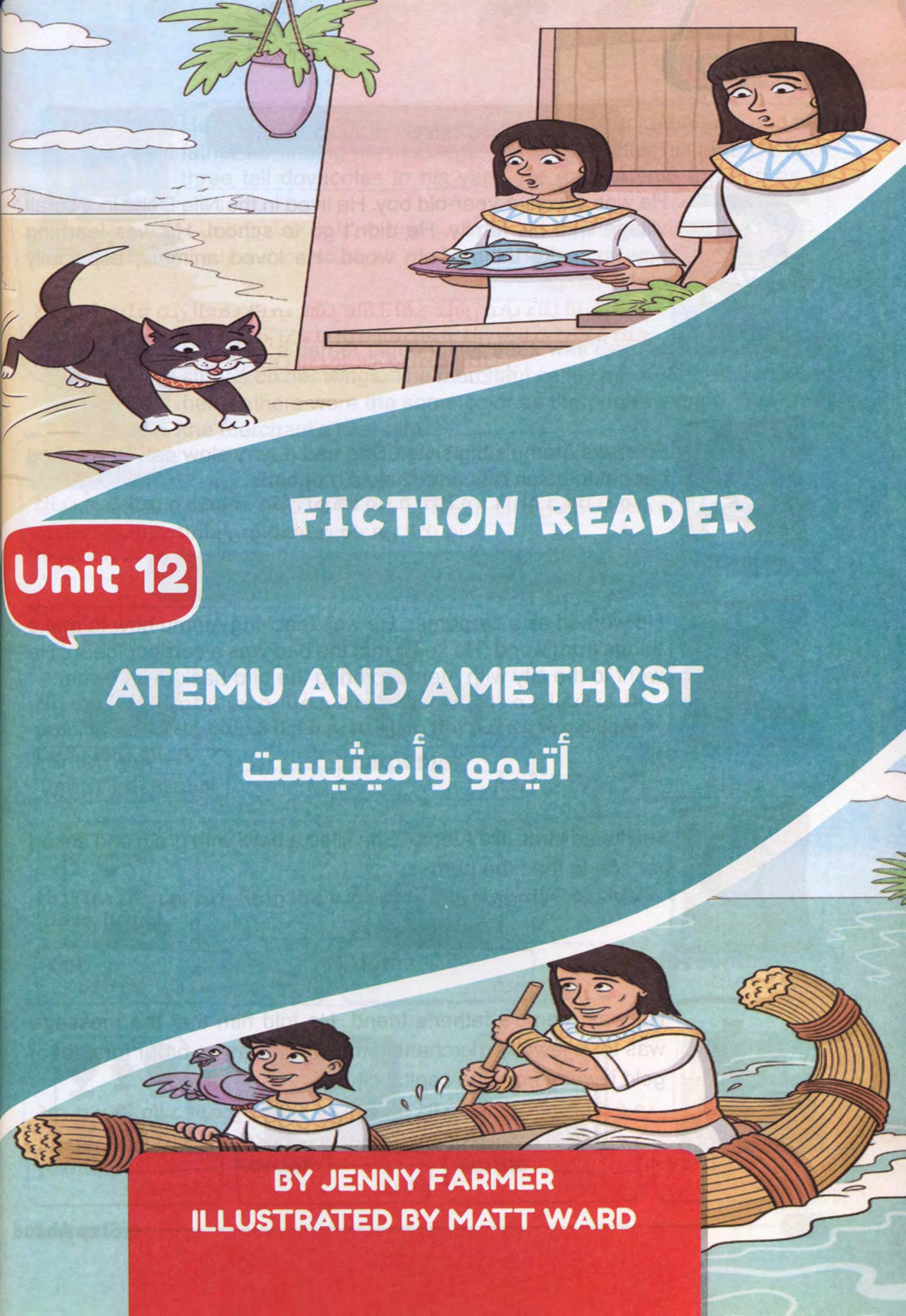
....

....

....

....





FICTION READER

Unit 12

ATEMU AND AMETHYST

أتيمو وأميثيست

BY JENNY FARMER
ILLUSTRATED BY MATT WARD

Characters الشخصيات



Atemu

He was a twelve-year-old boy. He lived in the Nile Delta in a small village with his family. He didn't go to school. He was learning how to make things from wood. He loved animals, especially birds.

كان صبيًا يبلغ من العمر اثني عشر عامًا. لقد عاش في دلتا النيل في قرية صغيرة مع عائلته ولم يذهب إلى المدرسة. كان يتعلم كيفية صنع الأشياء من الخشب وكان يحب الحيوانات، وخاصة الطيور.





Nedjem

She was Atemu's big sister. She had a very slow cat. She asked her cat to catch rats and snakes, not birds.

كانت أخت أتيمو الكبرى. وكان لديها قطة بطيئة جدًا. لقد طلبت من قطتها اصطياد الفئران والثعابين وليس الطيور.



Atemo's father

He worked as a carpenter. He was teaching Atemu how to make things from wood. He knew that the bird was a carrier pigeon. He went to the city with Atemo to bring the bird back to its owner.

كان يعمل نجارًا. وكان يُعلِّم أتيمو كيفية صنع الأشياء من الخشب. كان يعلم أن الطائر كان حمامة زاجلة وذهب إلى المدينة مع أتيمو لإعادة الطائر إلى مالكه.



Atemo's mother

She loved birds like Atemo. She filled a bowl with grain and asked her son to feed the birds.

كانت تحب الطيور مثل أتيمو.لقد ملأت وعاء بالحبوب وطلبت من ابنها إطعام الطيور.



The scribe

He was Atemo's father's friend. He told him that the message was for a jewelry merchant in the city. It was an order for a lot of gold jewelry from the capital city.

كان صديق والد أتيمو وأخبره أن الرسالة كانت لتاجر مجوهرات في المدينة. لقد كان طلبًا لكثير من المجوهرات الذهبية من العاصمة.



Mr Akhon

He was a jewelry merchant in the city. He thanked Atemo and his father for finding his message and looking after his bird. He had three tall dovecotes in his yard. He gave Atemo the bird as a present.

كان تاجر مجوهرات في المدينة. شكر أتيمو ووالده على العثور على رسالته ورعاية طائره وكان لديه ثلاثة أبراج حمام طويلة في فناء منزله. لقد أعطى أتيمو الطائر كهدية.



Amethyst

She was a carrier pigeon. Her beak was dark grey and she had stripes on her wings. The merchant called her Amethyst because her feathers were the same color as the purple stones. She was the merchant's best bird.

كانت حمامة زاجلة. كان منقارها رماديًا داكنًا و كان لديها خطوط على جناحيها. أطلق عليها التاجر اسم أميثيست لأن ريشها كان نفس لون الحجارة الأرجوانية وكانت أفضل طائر للتاجر.

Picture Dictionary القاموس المصور



amethyst
أميثيست (حجر أرجواني)



carpenter
نجار



carrier pigeon
حمامة زاجلة



coo
هديل الحمام

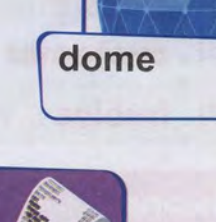


dome
قبة
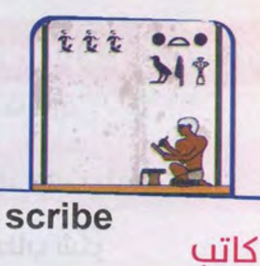


dovecotes
أبراج الحمام

jewelry
مجوهرات





order
طلب



scribe
كاتب



yard
فناء

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

The Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	village	قرية
parents	الوالدين	wood	خشب
grain	حبوب	flock	سرب
noise	ضوضاء	field	حقل
nearby	مجاور - قريب	bowl	وعاء - سلطانية
kindly	بلطف	gray	رمادي
feathers	ريش	neck	رقبة
purple	بنفسجي - أرجواني	chest	صدر
hungrily	بجوع	suddenly	فجأة
the sky	السماء	feet	أقدام
beak	منقار	stripes	خطوط
wing	جناح	quickly	بسرعة
behind	خلف	vegetables	خضروات
dinner	وجبة العشاء	sound	صوت
wooden box	صندوق خشبي	papyrus paper	ورق البردي
message	رسالة	merchant	تاجر
the capital city	العاصمة	roof	سطح
boat	قارب	special	خاص
shoulder	كتف	welcome	مرحبًا
trip	رحلة	stones	أحجار
holes	ثقوب	customer	زبون - عميل
exactly	بالتحديد	babies	صغار

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

Once upon a time	ذات مرة	thousands of birds	آلاف الطيور
a long time ago	منذ وقت طويل	It's time to go.	حان وقت الذهاب.
a thank you letter	خطاب شكر	Good idea!	فكرة جيدة!

ATEMU AND AMETHYST





Once upon a time, a long, long, time ago, a boy called Atemu lived in the Nile Delta. His home was in a small village, and he lived with his parents and his big sister, Nedjem.

Atemu was twelve, but he didn't go to school. His father worked as a carpenter. He was teaching Atemu how to make things from wood.

Atemu loved animals, especially birds. He liked to watch the birds that came into his yard. Every day, Atemu gave some grain to the birds. He enjoyed watching them eat. Often, his sister's cat came into the yard and watched the birds, too. It sometimes jumped at the birds, but it never caught them. It was a very slow cat.

في قديم الزمان، ومنذ زمن بعيد جدًا، عاش صبي يُدعى أتيمو في دلتا النيل. كان منزله في قرية صغيرة، وكان يعيش مع والديه وأخته الكبرى ندجم. كان أتيمو في الثانية عشرة من عمره، لكنه لم يكن يذهب إلى المدرسة. كان والده يعمل نجارًا، وكان يُعَلِّم أتيمو كيفية صنع الأشياء من الخشب.

كان أتيمو يحب الحيوانات، وخاصة الطيور. وكان يحب مشاهدة الطيور التي تأتي إلى فِناء منزله. كان أتيمو يعطي بعض الحبوب للطيور كل يوم. لقد كان يستمتع بمراقبتها وهي تأكل. في كثير من الأحيان، كانت قطة أخته تأتي إلى فِناء المنزل وتراقب الطيور أيضًا. وكانت أحيانًا ما تقفز على الطيور، لكنها لم تكن تُمسك بها أبدًا. لقد كانت قطة بطيئة جدًا.

One day in October, Atemu was in the yard when he heard a strange noise. He looked up and saw something amazing. A huge flock of birds were flying over his village. They were coming down to a field nearby.
"Mom! Mom!" shouted Atemu. "There are so many birds! Can I go and see them?"
His Mom came out of the house and looked. "Wow!" she said. "Yes, you can go."
She filled a bowl with grain. "Here, you are," she said kindly. "You can take this for them."

في أحد أيام شهر أكتوبر، كان أتيمو في فِناء المنزل عندما سمع ضجيجًا غريبًا. نظر للأعلى ورأى شيئاً مذهلاً. كان سرب ضخم من الطيور يحلق فوق قريته. وكانت تهبط على حقل قريب.
صاح أتيمو: "أمي! أمي! هناك الكثير من الطيور! هل يمكنني الذهاب لرؤيتها؟"
خرجت والدته من المنزل ونظرت. قالت: "واو! نعم، يمكنك الذهاب."
ملأت الأم وعاءً بالحبوب. وقالت بلطف: "تفضّل. يمكنك أن تأخذ هذا لها."



When Atemu got to the fields, he couldn't believe his eyes. There were thousands of birds. Every one of them was light gray, with shiny green feathers on its neck and purple feathers on its chest. They were beautiful! They called to each other with a long "whoo" sounds.
Atemu threw the grain to the birds. They ate it hungrily. Then, suddenly, they flew into the sky again. Atemu watched them go.

وعندما وصل أتيمو إلى الحقول، لم يصدق عينيه. كان هناك الآلاف من الطيور. وكان لونها كلها رمادي فاتح مع ريش أخضر لامع على رقبتها وريش أرجواني على صدرها. كانت الطيور جميلة! وكانت تنادي على بعضها البعض بأصوات "وهووووو" طويلة.
رمى أتيمو الحبوب للطيور. فأكلتها بجوع. ثم فجأة طارت الطيور إلى السماء مرة أخرى. وشاهدها أتيمو وهي تذهب.

Then he noticed a bird at his feet.

It was looking at him.

"Coo, coo, coo, coo," it went.

"I don't have any grain for you, bird," said Atemu.

"Coo, coo, coo, coo," went the bird.

The noise was different from the other birds. It looked different too. First, it was bigger. The other birds had yellow beaks, but this bird's beak was dark gray. This bird also had stripes on its wings. Atemu could see something strange on its leg, too.

Just then, Atemu heard his mother calling him.

Atemu started walking quickly, but he could hear the bird behind him. It was following him!

"Why don't you fly with your friends?" said Atemu, but the bird just cooed.

ثم لاحظ طائرًا عند قدميه. لقد كان ينظر إليه. وأخذ يصدر أصوات: "كوو، كوو، كوو، كوو."

قال أتيمو: "ليس لدي أي حبوب لك أيها الطائر."

فأخذ الطائر يصدر أصوات: "كوو، كوو، كوو، كوو."

كان صوته مختلفًا عن الطيور الأخرى. وكان مظهره مختلفًا أيضًا. أولًا، كان أكبر. الطيور الأخرى كانت مناقيرها لونها أصفر، أما منقار هذا الطائر فكان لونه رمادي داكن. وكان لهذا الطائر أيضًا خطوط على جناحيه. واستطاع أتيمو أن يرى شيئًا غريبًا على ساقه أيضًا.

وفي نفس الوقت، سمع أتيمو والدته تناديه.

بدأ أتيمو يمشي بسرعة، لكنه كان يسمع الطائر خلفه. لقد كان يتبعه!

قال أتيمو: "لماذا لا تطير مع أصدقائك؟"، ولكن الطائر أصدر صوت هديل فقط.



When Atemu got to his yard, the bird came in after him. He watched it while he cleaned vegetables for dinner.

Then he saw Nedjem's cat. It was watching the bird, too.

Suddenly, the cat jumped on the bird! But the bird didn't fly away.

Nedjem ran and picked up the cat. "You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!" she said.

"What's wrong with that bird? It can't fly," said their mother. "Is it hurt?"

"Maybe!" said Atemu. "It didn't fly with the other birds." Atemu walked to the bird. When he touched its left wing, it made a quiet sound.

"I think its wing is hurt," said Atemu.

عندما وصل أتيمو إلى فِناء منزله، جاء الطائر وراءه. وراقبه أتيمو بينما كان ينظف الخضار للعَشاء. ثم رأى قطة ندجم، وكانت تراقب الطائر أيضًا. وفجأة قفزت القطة على الطائر! لكن الطائر لم يُحَلِّق بعيدًا.

ركضت ندجم وأمسكت القطة. قالت لها: "يجب أن تصطادي الفئران والثعابين، وليس الطيور!"

قالت والدتهما: "ما مشكلة هذا الطائر؟ إنه لا يستطيع الطيران. هل هو مجروح؟"

قال أتيمو: "ربما! فهو لم يُحَلِّق مع الطيور الأخرى." مشى أتيمو إلى الطائر. عندما لمس جناحه الأيسر، أصدر صوتًا هادئًا. فقال أتيمو: "أعتقد أن جناحه يؤلمه."



When Atemu's father came home, Atemu showed him the bird. "It has a hurt wing, and there is something on its leg."
"Poor bird!" said his father. "What is that?" He took the object from the bird's leg. It was a very small wooden box. Atemu's father opened it. A piece of papyrus paper was inside.
"It's a message!" said Atemu's father. "This bird is a carrier pigeon."
"What's a carrier pigeon?" asked Atemu.

عندما عاد والد أتيمو إلى المنزل، أراه أتيمو الطائر وقال له: "إن جناحه مجروح، وهناك شيء في ساقه."
قال والده: "الطائر المسكين! ما هذا؟" وأخذ الشيء من ساق الطائر.
لقد كان صندوقًا خشبيًا صغيرًا جدًا. ففتحه والد أتيمو. وكان بداخله قطعة من ورق البردي.
قال والد أتيمو: "إنها رسالة! هذا الطائر هو حمامة زاجله."
فسأله أتيمو: "ما هي الحمامة الزاجلة؟"



"It's a bird which carries messages," said his father. "Important people in the city keep pigeons. The pigeons learn where they live. Then people take the pigeons to new places. When there is news from that place, they attach the message to the pigeon. It flies home and carries the message. That's why they're called carrier pigeons." "That's very clever!" said Atemu. "So, what does this message say?" "I don't know," said his father. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe."

قال والده: "إنه طائر يحمل الرسائل. يربي الأشخاص المهمون في المدينة الحمام. يتعلَّم الحمام أين يعيشون. ثم يأخذ الناس الحمام إلى أماكن جديدة. عندما يكون هناك أخبار من ذلك المكان، يُعَلِّقون الرسالة على الحمامة. وتطير الحمامة إلى منزلها وتحمل الرسالة. ولهذا السبب يُطلق عليه اسم الحمام الزاجل."
قال أتيمو: "هذا ذكي جدًا! إذن ماذا تقول هذه الرسالة؟"
قال والده: "لا أعرف. سآخذها إلى صديقي الكاتب."



Atemu looked after the pigeon. He made it a high table which the cat couldn't jump onto. He gave it water and grain and talked to it. The pigeon cooed back happily. Atemu's father went to the city. Three days later he came home. "Did you speak to the scribe?" said Atemu.

"Yes," said his father. "The message was for a jewelry merchant in the city, Mr Akhon. I took him the message, and he was very happy! It was an order for a lot of gold jewelry from the capital city. It was very important for him." "Mr Akhon also wants his pigeon. We'll take it to him next week." "Yes, father," Atemu said quietly.

For the next week, Atemu looked after the pigeon. The pigeon started to fly again. Every morning, it flew to the roof where Atemu slept and cooed to him. Atemu was very happy to have a new pigeon friend. "I don't want you to go home," he said to it quietly.

اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. لقد صنع لها طاولة مرتفعة لا تستطيع القطة القفز عليها. وأعطاها الماء والحبوب وتحدث معها، فردت الحمامة عليه بصوت هديل سعيد. ذهب والد أتيمو إلى المدينة. وبعد ثلاثة أيام عاد إلى المنزل.
قال أتيمو: "هل تحدثت مع الكاتب؟"
قال والده: "نعم. كانت الرسالة موجهة إلى تاجر مجوهرات في المدينة، السيد أكون. فأخذت الرسالة له وكان سعيدًا جدًا! لقد كانت طلبيةً لشراء الكثير من المجوهرات الذهبية من العاصمة. لقد كان الأمر مهمًا للغاية بالنسبة له."
"السيد أكون يريد حمامته أيضًا. سنأخذها إليه الأسبوع المقبل."
قال أتيمو بهدوء: "حسنًا يا أبي".
خلال الأسبوع التالي، اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. بدأت الحمامة في الطيران مرة أخرى. كل صباح، كان تُحَلِّق إلى السطح حيث كان أتيمو ينام وتُصدِر صوت هديل له. كان أتيمو سعيدًا جدًا بامتلاكه صديقة جديدة من الحمام.
قال لها بهدوء: "لا أريدكِ أن تعودي إلى منزلكِ."



The next Sunday, Atemu and his father got into their boat to go to the city. The pigeon sat on Atemu's shoulder.

Atemu was excited because it was his first trip to the city, but he was also sad. It was his last day with the pigeon.

But he forgot about that when he saw the houses of the city. There were so many and some of the houses were very big! Some houses had white domes with many small holes in the yard or on the roof.

"What are they?" asked Atemu. "Those are dovecotes." said Atemu's father. "Dovecotes are special houses for pigeons."

وفي يوم الأحد التالي، ركب أتيمو ووالده قاربهم للذهاب إلى المدينة. جلست الحمامة على كتف أتيمو.

كان أتيمو متحمسًا لأنها كانت رحلته الأولى إلى المدينة، لكنه كان حزينًا أيضًا. لقد كان ذلك اليوم هو يومه الأخير مع الحمامة.

لكنه نسي ذلك عندما رأى منازل المدينة. كان هناك الكثير من المنازل وكان بعضها كبير جدًا! وكانت لبعض المنازل قباب بيضاء بها العديد من الفتحات الصغيرة في الفِناء أو على السطح.

سأل أتيمو: "ما هذه؟"

فقال له والده: "هذه هي أبراج مبيت الحمام، وهي بيوت خاصة للحمام."



Finally, they arrived at a large house. "We're here!" Atemu's father said.

A smiling man came to meet them. He was wearing a lot of jewelry. Atemu knew it was the merchant.

"Welcome to my home!" Mr Akhon said. "Thank you so much for finding my message. It was from my most important customer. And thanks for looking after my pigeon. Her name is Amethyst – because her feathers are the same color as these purple stones. She is my best bird!"

"She was hurt," said Atemu. "I see," said the merchant. Can she fly now?"

"Yes," said Atemu. "She's much better."

"Come with me then. I'll show you where she lives."

وأخيرًا وصلا إلى منزل كبير. قال والد أتيمو: "لقد وصلنا!"

جاء رجل مبتسم لمقابلتهما. لقد كان يرتدي الكثير من المجوهرات. عرف أتيمو أنه التاجر.

قال السيد أكون: "أهلًا وسهلًا بكما في منزلي! شكرًا جزيلاً لك على العثور على رسالتي. لقد كانت تلك الرسالة مُرسَلة من أهم زبائني. وشكرا للاعتناء بحمامتي. اسمها أميثيست – لأن ريشها لونه نفس لون هذا الحجر الأرجواني. إنها أفضل الطيور لديّ!"

قال أتيمو: "لقد كانت مجروحة."

قال التاجر: "أرى ذلك. هل يمكنها الطيران الآن؟"

قال أتيمو: "نعم. إنها أفضل كثيرًا."

"تعاليا معي إذن. سأريكما أين تعيش."



Atemu and his father followed Mr Akhon into his yard. At one side, there were three tall dovecotes. "My birds will come home soon," the merchant said.
"How many do you have?" said Atemu.
"Oh, a lot." said Mr Akhon. "They have a lot of babies, so I don't know exactly."
Atemu looked into a dovecote. He could see some baby birds. "They're so cute!" Atemu said.
"It's time to go, son," said Atemu's father. "Say goodbye to the bird."

تَبِع أتيمو ووالده السيد أكون إلى فناء منزله. على جانب، كان هناك ثلاثة أبراج طويلة لمبيت الحمام. قال التاجر: "ستعود طيوري إلى المنزل قريبًا."
قال أتيمو: "كم لديك من الطيور؟"
قال السيد أكون: "أوه، الكثير منها. إن لديها الكثير من الصغار، لذلك لا أعرف بالضبط."
نظر أتيمو في برجٍ لمبيت الحمام. كان بإمكانه رؤية بعض الطيور الصغيرة. قال أتيمو: "إنها جميلة جدًا!"
قال والد أتيمو: "حان وقت الرحيل يا بني. قل وداعا للطائر."

"Goodbye Amethyst," said Atemu, softly. He touched her purple feathers, and she cooed. He was very sad, but he tried to smile.
The merchant was a kind man. He spoke to Atemu.
"You say Amethyst got well again, but she didn't fly home."
"Yes" said Atemu.
"Well, I think she'll be happy to stay with you now."



قال أتيمو بهدوء: "وداعا يا أميثيست". ولمس ريشها الأرجواني، فأصدرت صوت هديل.
كان حزينًا جدًا، لكنه حاول أن يبتسم.
كان التاجر رجلاً طيباً. وتحدث إلى أتيمو.
"أنت تقول إن أميثيست تحسنت مرة أخرى، لكنها لم تعد إلى المنزل."
قال أتيمو: "نعم."
"حسنًا، أعتقد أنها ستكون سعيدة بالبقاء معك الآن."

"Oh wow!" said Atemu. "Thank you so much." He looked at Amethyst, and she jumped onto his shoulder.

"She'll need a small house," said Mr Akhon.

"I can make one!" said Atemu. "I'm learning to be a carpenter."

"I'll help you," said his dad.

قال أتيمو: "أوه واو! شكراً جزيلاً." ونَظَر إلى أميثيست، وقفزت على كتفه.

قال أكون: "ستحتاج إلى منزل صغير."

قال أتيمو: "أستطيع أن أصنع لها واحدًا! أنا أتعلم لأكون نجارًا."

قال والده: "سوف أساعدك."



On the boat home, Atemu's father said. "Mr Akhon is a very good man. He gave you his best bird!" Atemu said. "Yes. How can I thank him?" "You could ask the scribe to write a thank you letter for you," said his father.

"Good idea!" said Atemu!"And Amethyst can take it to him!"

وهما عائِدَيْن على متن القارب إلى المنزل، قال والد أتيمو: "السيد أكون رجل طيب للغاية.

لقد أعطاك أفضل طائر لديه!

قال أتيمو. "نعم. كيف يمكنني أن أشكره؟"

قال والده: "يمكنك أن تطلب من الكاتب أن يكتب رسالة شكر نيابة عنك."

قال أتيمو: "فكرة جيدة! ويمكن أن تأخذها أميثيست إليه!"

Questions with their model answers

1 Put the story events in the correct order:

a. Atemu had never been to the city. ( )

b. Atemu fed the huge flock of birds some grain. ( )

c. Atemu gave the bird and message to Mr Akhon. ( )

d. The bird had a box on its leg. It was a carrier pigeon. ( )

e. One bird had a gray beak. Its wing was hurt. ( )

f. Atemu made a table for the bird. ( )

g. Mr Akhon gave Amethyst to Atemu. ( )

2 Complete the paragraph with the past simple form of the verbs:

Atemu loved birds. Every day, birds ① .... (come) into his yard, and Atemu ② .... (give) them grain. His sister's cat watched the birds, too, but it never ③ .... (catch) them. One day, Atemu ④ .... (hear) a strange noise in the sky. A lot of birds were flying into a field near his home. Atemu went to the field and ⑤ .... (throw) grain to the birds. The birds ⑥ .... (eat) the grain and then ⑦ .... (fly) away. But one bird was different. It stayed on the ground.

3 Complete the paragraph. Check your answers in the story:

All of the birds were light gray, with green feathers on their ① .... and ② .... feathers on their chests. But one bird was a little different. It was ③ .... than the other birds. They had ④ .... beaks, but its beak was ⑤ .... It also sounded different. The ⑥ .... the other birds made was a long "whoo", but it went "coo coo". It had ⑦ .... on its wings, but they didn't.

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

home - leg - news - orders - pigeons

1. Important people in Ancient Egypt often kept carrier ....
2. Carrier pigeons can learn where their .... is.
3. Carrier pigeons often carried .... from one place to another city.
4. People used carrier pigeons to send .... to merchants.
5. People attached their messages to the pigeon's ....

5 Complete the sentences. Check in the story:

1. Atemu felt both .... and excited when he got into the boat to go to the city.
2. Atemu saw some big houses and some .... from the boat.
3. Atemu knew Mr Akhon because he was wearing a lot of ....
4. The pigeon's name was .... because she had purple feathers.
5. Mr Akhon's pigeons had a lot of cute ....
6. Mr Akhon told Atemu to make a .... for the pigeon.

6 Who says this in the story? Read and write the names:

Atemu - Atemu's father - Atemu's mother - Nedjem

1. "I think its wing is hurt," ....
2. "You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!" ....
3. "It can't fly," ....
4. "That's very clever!" ....
5. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe." ....

7 Read and check the correct answers:

1. Why did Mr Akhon say thank you to Atemu?
   - [ ] Atemu helped his business.
   - [ ] Atemu looked after his pigeon.
   - [ ] Atemu was feeling sad.
2. Why did Mr Akhon give Atemu the pigeon?
   - [ ] The pigeon couldn't fly now.
   - [ ] Mr Akhon knew Atemu wanted the pigeon.
   - [ ] Mr Akhon wanted to thank Atemu for helping him.
3. Why did Atemu's father say Mr Akhon was a good man?
   - [ ] Mr Akhon didn't have to give Amethyst to Atemu.
   - [ ] Mr Akhon made a lot of beautiful jewelry.
   - [ ] Mr Akhon gave Amythest to Atemu.

8 Circle the correct answer:

1. What is the story mainly about?
   - a) a cat that can't catch birds
   - b) a boy who loves birds
2. When and where did the story happen?
   - a) in the Nile Delta, in Ancient Egypt
   - b) in Cairo, a few years ago
3. What is the moral of the story?
   - a) When somebody helps you, you should always be polite.
   - b) When somebody helps you, you should help them if you can.
   - c) When somebody helps you, you should give them a pigeon.

9 Answer the following questions:

1. Why couldn't the bird fly?
   ▶ ....
2. What did the bird have on its leg?
   ▶ ....
3. What kind of bird is it?
   ▶ ....
4. Who is Mr Akhon?
   ▶ ....
5. What will Atemu and his father do next week?
   ▶ ....
6. Why did Atemu's father take the message to the scribe?
   ▶ ....
7. How did Atemu look after Amethyst?
   ▶ ....
8. Why was the message important for Mr Akhon?
   ▶ ....
9. Why will Atemu and his father take the pigeon to Mr Akhon?
   ▶ ....
10. Do all the messages say thank you and give news?
   ▶ ....
11. Which news is the most interesting?
   ▶ ....
12. Choose one message to send to Mr Akhon. Why did you choose that message?
   ▶ ....
13. Why do you think the bird stayed with Atemu?
   ▶ ....
14. Why do you think carrier pigeons were needed?
   ▶ ....
15. What do you think will happen next in the story?
   ▶ ....



Answers

1 Put the story events in the correct order:

1. b	2. e	3. d	4. f	5. a	6. c	7. g

2 Complete the paragraph with the past simple form of the verbs:

1- came	2- gave	3- caught	4- heard
5- threw	6- ate	7- flew	

3 Complete the paragraph. Check your answers in the story:

1- necks	2- purple	3- bigger	4- yellow
5- dark gray	6- sound	7- stripes	

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

1- pigeons	2- home	3- news	4- orders	5- leg

5 Complete the sentences. Check in the story:

1- sad	2- dovecotes	3- jewelry
4- Amethyst	5- baby birds	6- small house

6 Who says this in the story? Read and write the names:

1- Atemu	2- Nedjem	3- Atemu's mother
4- Atemu	5- Atemu's father	

7 Read and check the correct answers:

✓ 1. Atemu looked after his pigeon.

✓ 2. Mr Akhon knew Atemu wanted the pigeon.

✓ 3. Mr Akhon gave Amythest to Atemu.

8 Circle the correct answer:

1. **b)** a boy who loves birds

2. **a)** in the Nile Delta, in Ancient Egypt

3. **b)** When somebody helps you, you should help them if you can.



9 Answer the following questions:

1. Because it had a hurt wing.
2. A message in a small wooden box.
3. It was a carrier pigeon.
4. He was a jewelry merchant in the city.
5. They will go to the city to take the pigeon to the merchant.
6. To know what was written in the message.
7. He made it a high table which the cat couldn't jump onto. He gave it water and grain and talked to it.
8. Because it was an order for a lot of gold jewelry from the capital city.
9. Because it was very important for him and he wanted it. It was his best bird!
10. No, they don't.
11. The order for a lot of gold jewelry from the capital city.
12. Thank you for giving me Amethyst. Because he was a kind man.
13. Because Atemu was kind with her. He gave it food and drink. He helped her to fly again.
14. Because they carried messages and news from one place to another.
15. Atemu will build a house for Amethyst and she will live with him in his village.



Listening Connect (6)



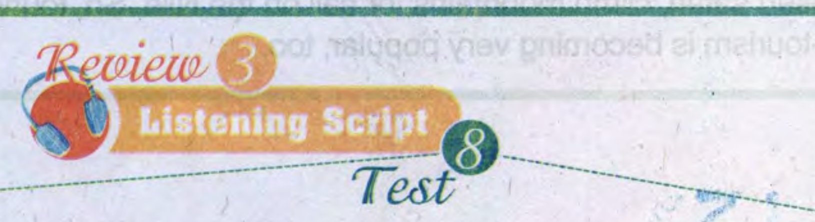
Fady is a student at a primary school. He is in grade six. He wanted to learn about Ancient Egyptian artifacts. So, he went on a school trip to the museum last week. He met a guide there. The guide showed him the artifacts. A lot of the artifacts are made of gold. Fady enjoyed his time there.



Ali was shopping with his parents at the market. He saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed him how a train moved. Ali thought the toys were amazing. Ali's dad came to see the toys, too. He liked the train, so he bought it. He said Ali could play with it.



My name is Hugo and I live in France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – a message in a bottle! It was from a boy called Tom. I enjoyed reading about his favorite things.



The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze. Amazingly, some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible. For them, iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.



Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting the desert with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down - more animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.



Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has helped many people. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.



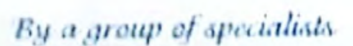
Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too.













Units Revision & Revision Tests & Answer Key

CONNECT

Content





Units Revision

Revision on Unit 7

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

safe - grain - adored - pests - pets

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as ① .... They particularly ② .... cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of ③ .... like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of ④ ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

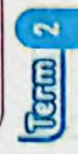
hugged - king - wish - gold - daughter

Many years ago, there lived a ① .... called King Midas. King Midas thought he would like everything he touched to turn into ② .... and the king's ③ .... came true. But when he touched the food, he couldn't eat it because it turned to gold. When he touched his ④ ...., she also turned to gold! King Midas started crying and didn't want that wish any more.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dry - durable - climate - damage - preserve

Hi, I'm Mona. Yesterday, I asked my teacher why we have so many artifacts. He said that one reason is the ① .... We have a hot, ② .... climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to ③ .... them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and ④ .... stone.





4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

after - keep - pets - hated - adored

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly ① .... cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked ② .... them and kept them safe. Today, cats are still popular ③ .... in Egypt. Other animals that people ④ .... today include, turtles, fish, and birds.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

traded - cooled - heated - harder - rocks

One of the most interesting things Ancient Egyptians ① .... with other countries was metal! The Ancient Egyptians first found metal in ② .... around 7,000 years ago. They ③ .... the rocks and took out the metal parts. They learned that metal was ④ .... than stone, and that they could melt and make different shapes with it.

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

castle - asked - threw - tripped - warm

One night, King Midas was walking in his garden when he ① .... over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his ② .... There, he gave it food and a ③ .... bed. After that, the goat felt much better and ④ .... the king what he would like more than anything else in the world.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. a hot, - have - We - dry - in Egypt - climate.

▶ ....

2. is - ship - It - the world's - oldest - intact.

▶ ....

3. know - What - would - like - to - you?

▶ ....

4. We're - more about - artifacts - Ancient Egyptian - excited - to learn.

▶ ....

5. artifacts - so many - have - do - we - Why?

▶ .... ?

6. He - Friday - at - the museum - on - was.

▶ ....

7. animal - their - Which - favorite - was?

▶ .... ?

8. believed - The Ancient Egyptians - looked after - cats - them - that.

▶ ....

9. they - cats - their - did - feed - What?

▶ .... ?

10. The Ancient Egyptians - many - as pets - animals - and kept - loved.

▶ ....

11. other - the Ancient Egyptians - did - animals - What - keep?

▶ .... ?

12. the metal - They - heated - and took out - the rocks - parts.

▶ ....

13. for making - Gold - a popular - is - metal - jewelry.

▶ ....

14. was - in the world - Ancient Egypt - one of - economies - the strongest.

▶ ....

15. kind - King - a - was - Midas - man.

▶ ....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. king midas was a kind man
   ▶ ....
2. king midas's tears fell on his precious roses
   ▶ ....
3. what is luxor famous for
   ▶ ....
4. ahmed didn't go to school on monday
   ▶ ....
5. my family and i went to aswan on vacation
   ▶ ....
6. what was the ancient egyptians' favorite animal
   ▶ ....
7. the ancient egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets
   ▶ ....
8. the khufu solar ship is an artifact from ancient egypt
   ▶ ....
9. my dad went on a business trip to tokyo
   ▶ ....
10. i like chinese food so much
   ▶ ....

9 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. The ancient artifacts are (fascinating - boring - uninteresting). Many tourists like to see them.
2. The climate in Egypt is good for (preserving - damaging - destroying) artifacts, so we can see them today.

3. My friend (dislikes - adores - hates) football. He loves it very much.
4. (Grain - Plant - Pet) is seeds from plants used to make flour and bread.
5. (Wisdom - Material - History) means using your knowledge to make good decisions.
6. To (mummify - produce - damage) means to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time.
7. (Trade - Culture - System) means buying and selling things between countries.
8. (Wood - Metal - Glass) is something, like gold or iron that is hard and strong.
9. A/An (trade - weapon - economy) is an object used for fighting or hunting animals.
10. (Country - Glass - Economy) means the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used.
11. A/An (granite - wood - artifact) is an object that was made by humans in the past.
12. (Granite - Glass - Clay) is a very hard and durable stone.
13. The Ancient Egyptians used (silver - clay - glass), which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots.
14. Egypt has a hot, dry (museum - history - climate), so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather.
15. Gold is very expensive. It is a very (cheap - valuable - bad) metal.
16. A (nurse - guide - teacher) helps tourists learn about the artifacts they visit.
17. The Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and (durable - non-durable - soft) stone.
18. A (pyramid - jewelry - statue) is an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or animal.
19. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian (economy - culture - history) to improve.



GRAMMAR REVISION

10 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. The Ancient Egyptians .... (know) that certain materials could last a long time.
2. The Ancient Egyptians .... (like) to use gold because it is valuable.
3. I .... (am) at the museum last weekend.
4. We .... (was) excited when we knew some of our ancient history.
5. The Ancient Egyptians .... (love) animals and kept many as pets.
6. The Ancient Egyptians .... (believe) that cats looked after them.
7. .... (Do) the Ancient Egyptians only keep cats as pets?
8. Pets .... (are) important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life.
9. .... (Was) there lots of people in yesterday's party?
10. The rats .... (not ate) the grain in the past because the cats ate the rats!
11. Gold .... (is) a popular metal for making jewelry and decorations in Ancient Egypt.
12. Ancient Egypt .... (is) one of the strongest economies in the world.
13. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen .... (make) a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb.
14. Many years ago, there .... (living) a king called King Midas.
15. When .... (do) the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?
16. Ancient Egyptians .... (wear) jewelry with the image of a scarab to protect them.
17. The restaurant is in .... (between) of the museum.
18. My classroom is .... (behind) to the computer room.
19. It's in front .... (from) the bookcase.
20. Tutankhamun's mask was found .... (under) his tomb.
21. The cat is .... (next) a dog and a goat.



22. The dinner is ready .... (in) the table.
23. The picture is next .... (at) the clock.
24. It's .... (on) front of the school.

11 Choose the correct answer: (The past simple tense)

1. What (were - was - is) the Ancient Egyptians' favorite animal?
2. The Ancient Egyptians (loved - loves - love) animals and kept many as pets.
3. There (is - were - was) a cat in almost every house in Ancient Egypt.
4. Ancient Egyptians believed that cats (kept - keeping - keeps) them safe.
5. Ancient Egyptian farmers (produced - produce - producing) a lot of grain.
6. She (don't - doesn't - didn't) travel to Alexandria last summer.
7. What other animals (did - does - do) the Ancient Egyptians keep?
8. What animals (were - was - are) popular pets in Egypt today?
9. (Does - Did - Do) the Ancient Egyptians keep birds as pets as well?
10. I (go - went - goes) to Al-Azhar Park with my family last weekend.
11. The rats didn't (ate - eats - eat) the grain because the cats ate the rats!
12. - A: Did she help her mom? B: No, she (did - wasn't - didn't).

12 Choose the correct answer: (Prepositions)

1. A: (Where - Who - When) is the eraser? B: It's under the book.
2. The bag is (next - behind - between) the book.
3. The cat is (between - under - on) the chair and the desk.
4. She found her keys (in - on - at) the table.
5. We met them (between - next - in front) of the park yesterday.
6. They found metal (in - front - next) the ground.
7. The science lab is (next - under - behind) to my classroom.
8. The book is on the desk, so the desk is (next - under - between) the book.
9. Hani is standing (in - on - at) front of Tamer.
10. My house is next (at - to - in) the supermarket.



Unit 7 Test 1



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (70) آخر الكتاب.

1. One of the most interesting things they traded with other countries was (wood - metal - glass - food).
2. The Ancient Egyptians first found metal in (seas - rivers - forests - rocks).
3. They (cooled - heated - threw - broke) the rocks and took out the metal parts.
4. They learned that metal was (harder - weaker - greater - smaller) than stone.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. The Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with (wood - granite - metal - gold), a very hard and durable stone.
2. My brother (dislikes - hates - adores - hits) his dog. He loves it so much.
3. When a country (fights - faces - borrows - trades) with another country, they buy from and sell to each other.
4. That gemstone is very (rare - pair - pear - bear) – it's not easy to find.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

craftsmen - tomb - iron - mined - meteorites

The Ancient Egyptians started using ① .... more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze. Ancient Egyptian ② .... made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's ③ .... from a meteorite. They also ④ .... iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Science has told us so much about the moon. The moon is not a friendly place. As there is no air or water, there is no life of any kind. For mile after mile there are many big mountains. Above, the sun and stars shine in a black sky. You can't stand or walk normally on the moon as we do on Earth. This is simply because there is no gravity on the moon. The moon is also a very

silent world because sounds can only travel through air. From this distance, the Earth is shining more than the stars. It looks like a big ball, colored blue, green and brown.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. There are many big (countries – farms – mountains) on the moon.
2. Above the moon, the sun and stars shine in a (bright–black–blue) sky.
3. The underlined word "It" refers to the (moon – Earth – sun).

B Answer these questions:

4. Why is the moon silent? ▶ ....
5. What does the Earth look like from the moon? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. walking - like - I - air - the fresh - in. ▶ ....
2. you - Did - have - weekend - a - nice? ▶ .... ?
3. Egypt - amulet - from Ancient - This - a scarab - is. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

1. Our science teacher .... (teach) us lots of useful things yesterday.
2. The armchair is .... (front) to the cupboard.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- they made a famous dagger for tutankhamun s tomb ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Rasha: (5Ms)

Tell her what you and your family did yesterday. Your email address is mona@school.net and your friend's email address is rasha@hotmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....

....

................,

....

Term 2

Revision on Unit 8

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hurts – skateboard – helmet – friends – knee

Hi! I'm Youssef. When I was younger, my favorite toy was my ① .... I loved going to the park and playing with my ② .... They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a ③ .... and knee pads. It really ④ .... if you fall off a skateboard!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

doll's – running – imagination – house – action

When Amina was little, she really liked games that used a lot of ① .... She was very good at making up stories. She had a ② .... house, some cuddly toys, and some ③ .... figures. Her sister Nour really enjoyed playing outside when she was younger. She liked ④ ...., climbing, and playing tennis. She was quite good at football, too.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

adventure - creative - solve - boring - bricks

Hello! I'm Belal. My favorite video games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different ① .... It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be ② .... and make something new. My sister enjoys playing ③ .... games, where you can go to different places to find something important or ④ .... a problem.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. good for - us - Playing - different ways - is - in lots of.
▶ ....
2. Did - on the - weekend - your grandma - visit - you?
▶ .... ?
3. of - a box - I - found - my old - toys.
▶ ....
4. action - my old - I loved - figures - playing - with.
▶ ....
5. your - yet - started - project - you - Have?
▶ .... ?
6. did - like - games - What - playing - you?
▶ .... ?
7. thought - fun - hide - was - Ahmed - and seek.
▶ ....
8. all - at - skipping - didn't - He - like!
▶ .... !
9. pads - a helmet - had - to wear - and knee - I.
▶ ....
10. playing - outside - really enjoyed - Nour - when she was - younger.
▶ ....
11. at the - shopping - parents - Ali's - were - market.
▶ ....
12. the stall - sitting - man - behind - An old - was.
▶ ....
13. loved - train set - We - playing - with - our.
▶ ....
14. playing - Mustafa loves - games - all - kinds - of.
▶ ....
15. video games - are - amazing - the images - in modern - Some of.
▶ ....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. did you visit grandma on last monday
▶ ....
2. adam didn't play board games very often
▶ ....
3. did fares love playing with his old action figures
▶ ....
4. we went on a vacation to alexandria last summer
▶ ....
5. my friend hesham loved playing with his train set
▶ ....
6. my cousin hasan had a skateboard when he was younger
▶ ....
7. when amina was little, she really liked board games
▶ ....
8. what was youssef's favorite toy
▶ ....
9. ghada prefers playing board games to skipping
▶ ....
10. did your dad travel to europe last january
▶ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. (When - What - How often) do read stories? ▶ I sometimes read stories.
2. A (store - stall - sail) is a large table that you use to sell things from at a market.
3. To (miss - beat - lose) someone means to be more successful than someone in a game.
4. To (have - make - do) a go means to try something.
5. When you (had - made - did) up something, you thought of or invented it.
6. My favorite toy was a train (set - toy - joystick).
7. I like to go skating on a (marble - joystick - skateboard) from time to time.
8. When Sara was a little girl, she had a (hug - cuddly - sleep) toy.
9. When you have a (play - ride - go) on something, you try this thing.





10. I like making up games for my (option - action - section) figures.
11. Did you play (beard - bread - board) games when you were younger?
12. Jana loves to play with her (doll's - marble's - skateboard's) house.
13. My sister Hana always takes her (marble - hug - cuddly) toy to bed when she goes to sleep.
14. An elephant's long nose is called the (trunk - tail - body).
15. The strong pieces of cloth that make a boat move are the (stall - sale - sail).
16. Press the number ten (bottom - button - boat) in the elevator to make it go up to the tenth floor.
17. The (laughter - daughter - drought) happens when there isn't enough rain.
18. When I had a (skateboard - marble - toy), I could go really fast after a while.
19. I play video games with my brother, and I always (hit - win - beat) him.
20. My old (toys - figures - rollerblades) are too small for me now. I can't wear them.
21. He made up lots of games for his action (figures - marbles - trains).

GRAMMAR REVISION

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Did Hazem .... (visited) his aunt last Friday?
2. When my dad .... (is) younger, his favorite toy was a skateboard.
3. When we .... (are) younger, we played football in the streets.
4. He was .... (quite) good at the match. He scored a lot of goals.
5. He didn't like playing hopscotch .... (very).
6. This game is .... (real) interesting!
7. Some of the subjects I study are .... (at all) difficult.
8. What subjects did you like .... (study)?
9. I .... (so) liked playing with my train set when I was younger.
10. I finished .... (watch) TV when my mom got home.



11. We imagined .... (be) in a plane over the city.
12. Did you enjoy .... (read) adventure books?
13. My sister enjoys .... (make) up stories.
14. He hates .... (play) basketball.
15. My granddad continued .... (tell) me about his past memories.

8 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Were - Did - Was) you visit your grandma last weekend?
2. When I (was - am - be) younger, my favorite toy was a train set.
3. I didn't (had - has - have) a train set, but my sister had a big doll's house.
4. When you (were - are - was) younger, what was your favorite toy?
5. He (really - very - so) liked playing with his train set when he was younger.
6. My friend Ahmed is (very - quite - at all) good at tennis. He always beat me.
7. Khaled is (at all - quite - so) good at football – he always scores a lot of goals!
8. This story is not good (quite - so - at all). It's very boring.
9. Sherif doesn't like basketball (at all - quite - very).
10. I thought that this movie was (quite - at all - not) funny, but it wasn't.
11. My brother finished (read - reads - reading) this book in a week.
12. He imagined himself (playing - plays - play) with Cristiano Ronaldo.
13. Mai enjoyed (spend - spending - spends) the weekend with her grandparents.
14. They preferred (going - go - went) to the beach by bus.
15. Hamdi stopped (play - played - playing) with matches when he hurt himself.
16. Hosam liked (to run - ran - running), climbing, and playing tennis.
17. She loves (going - goes - gone) to the park.
18. I hate (played - plays - playing) handball.
19. I always imagined (be - been - being) on the moon.
20. Grandma continued (show - showing - showed) us lots of her old photos.



Unit 8 Test 2



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (70) آخر الكتاب.

1. Hani started a project about (trains - toys - hopscotch - skipping) and games on the weekend.
2. Hani was very good at (hiding - seeking - skipping - cooking).
3. He and his friends used different colored (balls - gloves - shoes - chalk) to draw the squares.
4. Some of Hani's friends (hated - disliked - preferred - wanted) skipping.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Press the red (bottom - bullet - button - put) to make a machine stop.
2. (Which - How often - What - Where) do you play video games?
   ▶ I play video games twice a week.
3. I had a new games (skateboards - dice - board - console) to play video games with.
4. I thought hide and (seek - think - sink - thought) was fun.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

marbles – toy – games – beat – cuddly

I'm Yaseen. I played board ① .... when I was younger. I played with my older brother, but he usually ② .... me! Sometimes, we played ③ .... I think I'll look for some of my old toys later. I'd love to see my favorite ④ .... toy again.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Last summer, Magdy went on holiday to the seaside. He stayed with his parents in a nice place close to the sea. Magdy is nineteen. His brother Karam is thirteen. There were mostly young people on the holiday, but there weren't many children there.

They had a wonderful time. They played rackets some of the time with their father. Magdy went swimming a lot. Karam loves swimming too. They got up



early every morning and went for a swim before breakfast. His father did a lot of painting. He is a businessman but he paints a lot in his free time. The best thing about the holiday was people. Ahmed made a lot of friends.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Magdy's father paints pictures because it's his (hobby - job - sport - game).
2. Magdy is (younger - older - taller - faster) than his brother.
3. The underlined word "close to" means (far - remote - near - distant) .

B Answer these questions:

4. What's Magdy's father's job? ▶ ....
5. What was the best thing on that holiday? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. go - you - on - them - a - Did - have? ▶ .... ?
2. was - when he - He got - eight - skateboard - his first. ▶ ....
3. so - difficult - games - skipping - Some - are. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

1. She preferred .... (drink) juice to drinking tea.
2. I was .... (at all) good at hopscotch!

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

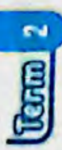
- my brother and i play video games on fridays ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:(5Ms)

"Hopscotch"

Ideas to help you: popular - play - playground - friends - draw - squares - enjoy

....
....
....
....



Revision on Unit 9

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

boat - message - color - bottle - coast

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the ① ....
and I love sailing my ② .... Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – a ③ .... in a bottle! It traveled over 6,000 kilometers. I enjoyed reading about the favorite things in the message. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the ④ .... green.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

set - turns - let - ending- countryside

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the ① ...., many years ago. Two of the characters – Goha and his son – take ② .... riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should ③ .... his father ride. When Goha rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. In the ④ .... of the story, they both carry the donkey!

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

surfed- by - in - message- bottle

Tom's grandparents lived ① .... the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, ② ...., and played games on the sand. One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass ③ .... in the water. He told his granddad that he would put it in the trash. Granddad said that he had a better idea and that they should write a ④ .... in a bottle.





4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

lonely - down - truth - lying - lies

One day, Peter was ① .... on the grass watching his sheep. He felt ② .... and bored and decided to have some fun. He shouted, "Wolf! There's a wolf!" to the villagers in the field below. He laid ③ .... and waited. The villagers were busy working, but they were worried about Peter's sheep. They reached the top of the hill, hot and tired. They knew he was lying to them. The villagers were very angry and told him he should tell the ④ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. a review of - writing - one of - I'm - stories - Goha's.
   ▶ ....
2. is - the countryside, - years - ago - many - The setting.
   ▶ ....
3. They - turns - riding - donkey - took - the.
   ▶ ....
4. should - a turn - have - He - let - his son.
   ▶ ....
5. the story - exciting - of - is - The ending - very.
   ▶ ....
6. both - and clever - stories - His - funny - are.
   ▶ ....
7. all over - the - popular - are - world - His stories.
   ▶ ....
8. every - the same - country - the stories - Are - in?
   ▶ .... ?
9. grandparents - the - Tom's - sea - by - lived.
   ▶ ....

10. their house - near - The beach - and beautiful - was - quiet.

▶ ....

11. a - Let's - write - a message - bottle - in.

▶ ....

12. message - a - What's - bottle - in - a?

▶ .... ?

13. Hugo - My name - and - in Biarritz - I live - is.

▶ ....

14. were - doing - What - you - yesterday?

▶ .... ?

15. the - park - I - to - was - walking.

▶ ....

16. alone - Peter - a - shepherd - worked - as.

▶ ....

17. took - up - the sheep - the - hill - He.

▶ ....

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. i m writing a review of one of goha's stories

▶ ....

2. adam s grandparents lived by the sea

▶ ....

3. did ayman work as a shepherd

▶ ....

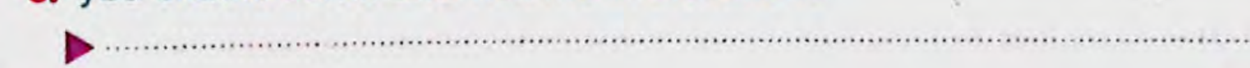
4. was osama scared when he saw a wolf

▶ ....

5. my name is hugo and i live in france

▶ ....

6. you should come and visit me in alexandria



7. the pyramids of giza are one of the most famous tourist attractions
▶ ....

8. have you ever visited luxor
▶ ....

9. how far is it from cairo to sharm el-sheikh
▶ ....

10. the river nile is the longest river in africa
▶ ....

11. where is the egyptian museum located
▶ ....

12. aswan is known for its beautiful sunsets and the high dam
▶ ....

7 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. We went to the beach to (surf - send - happen) and swim.
2. (Jokes - Tests - Books) make us laugh.
3. I really like the (setting - character - ending) of Goha in the story.
4. The (moral - character - setting) of the story is that you can't win everything.
5. The (ending - characters - setting) of this story is very interesting. In the end, the poor boy became a rich gentleman.
6. The (setting - moral - characters) of the story are Goha, his son and the donkey.
7. The (narrator - setting - ending) of the story is the countryside.
8. The (narrator - ending - character) is the person who tells the story.
9. The man who looks after sheep is a (keeper - farmer - shepherd).
10. He was (flying - lying - dying) on the grass, looking at his sheep while they were eating.
11. Every day, he took the sheep up the (grass - sea - hill) to eat.
12. The villagers are the people who live in a (village - city - town).

13. The boy was very (scary - scared - scaring) when he saw a wolf.
14. I love (driving - sailing - flying) my boat and fishing in the sea.
15. My friend Ali sent a (mail - reply- chat) to the message I sent to him last Monday.
16. A (ground - hill- river) is a piece of land that is a bit high.
17. Your words are (true - right - incorrect). No one can believe that.
18. When you (whisper - cry - shout), no one can hear you.
19. When you tell the (setting - truth - lies), everyone likes you.

GRAMMAR REVISION

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Saeed wasn't .... (play) video games in the morning.
2. What .... (are) you doing yesterday?
3. She was studying for the exam when he .... (arrive).
4. They .... (was) watching TV yesterday evening when we visited them.
5. We were...................... (have) dinner when the power went out.
6. .... (Were) it raining when you left the house?
7. The sun was shining brightly when we .... (go) for a walk in the park.
8. Mom was .... (cooks) dinner when the doorbell rang.
9. The children .... (are) playing outside when it started raining.
10. She was reading a book when she .... (receiving) a message on her phone.
11. .... (Is) he working when you arrived?
12. They .... (was) playing basketball at that time.
13. They were .... (laugh)while watching a comedy movie.
14. He .... (is) working on the project when the phone rang.
15. She was .... (write) something when Grandma came into the room.

9 Choose the correct answer:

1. My friend and I (was - were - are) playing in the park yesterday.
2. Yesterday afternoon, Badr was (play - played - playing) a football match.
3. Hana wasn't (watching - watches - watch) TV in the morning.
4. What (was - were - is) he doing yesterday?
5. They were playing video games when their dad (comes - come - came) home.
6. When their dad came home, they (were playing- play - played) video games.
7. I was reading a book when my little brother (falls - falling - fell) off his bike.
8. My brother Adham (is - was - does) taking his English exam yesterday.
9. What (is - was - were) they doing in the evening?
10. One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom (saw - sees - seeing) a glass bottle in the water.
11. It was a lovely evening, and the sun was (come - coming - came) down beautifully.
12. Hazem (is - was - were) studying in the school library yesterday afternoon.
13. My mom and dad (weren't - wasn't - aren't) in the house when you called us this morning.
14. I (swim - swam - was swimming) in the sea when I saw a dolphin.
15. Maha was working when her friend (sent - send - was sending) her an email.





Unit 9 Test 3

Total 30

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (70) آخر الكتاب.

1. Hugo lives in Biarritz, (England - France - Egypt - Italy).
2. He loves (driving - pulling - flying - sailing) his boat.
3. He saw the message in a bottle, and this means it traveled over 6,000 (kilometers - meters - centimeters - kilograms).
4. Hugo's favorite things are his boat, mangoes, and the color (red - blue - green - black).

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. The (ending - start - narrator - setting) is the last part of a story.
2. A man in France found the message and sent his (boat - reply - coast - son) to it.
3. A (sailor - shepherd - farmer - trader) is a person who looks after sheep.
4. The (character - narrator - notebook - moral) is the lesson you learn from a story.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

path - shining - scared - distance - forest

Hi, my name is Sherif. My friend Ali and I were playing in the ① .... yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was ② .... We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the ③ .... when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. I was ④ .... and wanted to go home at once.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

My name is Reem. My favorite hobby is reading. I like reading exciting stories. Last night, I read a very interesting story about a man and a woman who were sailing across the Atlantic Ocean. There was a terrible storm and their ship sank. They could see land and they swam towards it. They found themselves on a beautiful island. There were no people there. They could live there alone. They built a hut from trees. They stayed

about two months there. While they were sitting by the sea, they saw a ship coming near them. It took them home again.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. They stayed about (60 days - 10 weeks - two years - 60 weeks) on the island.
2. The underlined word "it" refers to the (story - storm - island - hobby).
3. Reem likes reading (stories - science books - math books - history books).

B Answer these questions:

4. Why did the ship sink? ▶ ....
5. How were the man and the woman rescued? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. very scared - Peter - a tree - was - climbed - and. ▶ ....
2. to - the - you - message - read - Do - want? ▶ .... ?
3. saw - when I - something - in the water - I was - sailing. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

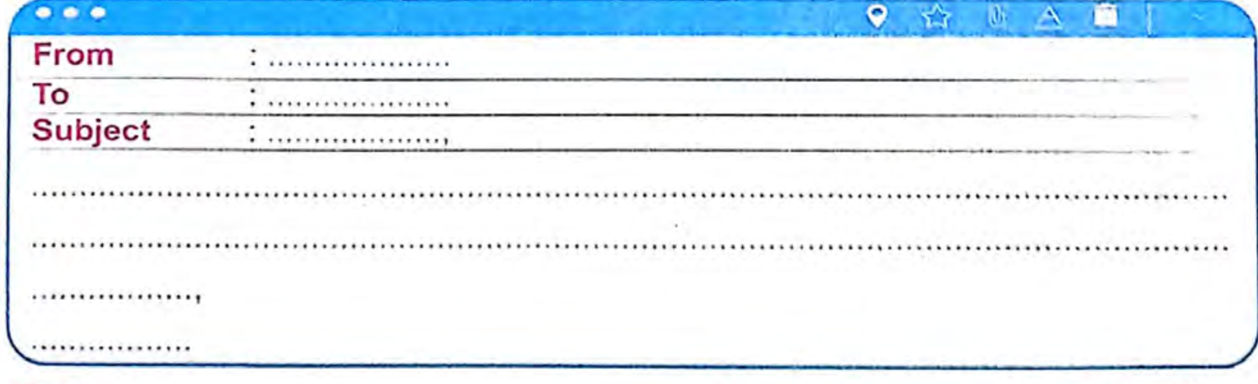
1. When she .... (meet) me, I was doing the shopping.
2. I .... (watch) TV when the light went out.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- was hosam playing tennis on friday at 2 pm ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Hala: (5Ms)

Tell her about a story you read and liked so much. Your email address is amal@yahoo.com and her email address is hala@gmail.com.


From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,
....
....
.................,
....

Revision on Unit 10

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

careful – hatch – real – count – nest

"Don't count your chickens before they ① .... You might have four eggs in a ② ...., but you don't really know how many will become chickens. So maybe it's about being ③ .... before you know something will happen. So you don't make too many plans before something is ④ .... That's sensible.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

protect – migrating – species – habitat – vacations

There are over 450 ① .... of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on ② .... to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many ③ .... water birds. It is an important ④ .... and people must protect it.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

respect – bird-watching – distance – wildlife – ideal

People who go ① .... in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too close to the birds, because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe ② .... and take lots of photographs! Wildlife watching is ③ .... for people who ④ .... nature.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

close – wildlife – habitats – quietly – damage

I love watching birds and other animals in their natural ① .... However, people mustn't get too ② .... to the birds, because it can make them frightened. It's important to speak and move quietly when you are near ③ .... I think people must be careful not to ④ .... the environment when they travel.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mustn't – camp – must – river – lizards

Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the ① .... in small boats, and ② .... in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see ③ .... and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we ④ .... swim because there might be crocodiles!

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

take – care – protect – create – cause

My presentation today is about eco-tourism and why it is a good idea. If people learn more about the environment, they will want to ① .... it. If tourists ② .... care of the places they visit, they will ③ .... less damage to the environment. If eco-tourism is successful, it will ④ .... new jobs for the local people. Thank you for listening.

7 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

journeys – weather – nests – migrate – bird-watching

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for wildlife and ① .... There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds ② .... – they must fly to different countries at certain times of year to find food, make ③ ...., or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their ④ .... go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.







8 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

similar – means – proverb – flock – feathers

"Birds of a feather flock together". This is a famous ① .... If they flock together, that ② .... they stay in a large group. And maybe it mentions ③ .... because they all have similar feathers. But here, it means that ④ .... people like doing the same things.

9 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. might have - You - four eggs - a nest - in.
   ▶ ....
2. is real, - something - If - it is true - and - happens.
   ▶ ....
3. Wildlife watching - is - nature - people who - respect - ideal for.
   ▶ ....
4. Egypt - visit - Many people - and bird-watching - for wildlife.
   ▶ ....
5. becoming - is - Eco-tourism - very - popular.
   ▶ ....
6. an - is - Egypt - country - amazing.
   ▶ ....
7. hotter - is - Africa - North - than - Europe.
   ▶ ....
8. interesting - Lots of - birds - Egypt - migrate to.
   ▶ ....
9. The Red Sea - is - and tourists - for locals - a fantastic area - to visit.
   ▶ ....
10. safe places - need - Animals - food - to find.
    ▶ ....
11. A habitat is - or plant - where - an animal - a place - lives.
    ▶ ....

10 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. even an eagle will not fly higher than the sun
   ▶ ....
2. the early bird catches the worm
   ▶ ....
3. birds of a feather flock together
   ▶ ....
4. the bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly
   ▶ ....
5. many kinds of birds migrate to egypt
   ▶ ....
6. lake qarun in fayoum is a good place to see flamingos
   ▶ ....
7. there are lots of things we can do in aswan
   ▶ ....
8. we mustn't waste water or drop litter
   ▶ ....
9. in egypt, there are many types of habitats
   ▶ ....
10. the red sea is an amazing area to visit
   ▶ ....

11 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. A/An (proverb - adverb - verb) is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true.
2. To (respect - hurt - damage) means to like something and want to look after it.
3. Eco-tourists stay in simple (information - vacation - accommodation), not large hotels.



4. When something is (awful - ideal - terrible), it is perfect or excellent.
5. When someone is (lazy - careless - successful), they try to do something, and they do it.
6. If something is (greedy - selfish - sensible), it represents a good idea that someone has thought about carefully.
7. The sea is very clear and there's a coral (reef - mountain - fish). It's beautiful!
8. When someone is (careless - helpless - careful), he tries hard not to make mistakes.
9. Things that are (unlike - similar - different) look the same or do the same things.
10. I saw a bird making a (net - tent - nest) on a tree to lay its eggs.
11. The sea is very clear and there's a coral (reef - mountain - fish).
12. A (mountain - market - guidebook) gives tourists information about a place.
13. Eco-tourism is more (sustainable - harmful - terrible) than traditional tourism.
14. Egypt is an amazing (city - country - town).
15. Many tourists can go on a desert (safari - snorkeling - sailing).
16. Many people visit Egypt for wildlife and bird- (watching - snorkeling - diving).
17. Many kinds of birds (migrate - snorkel - sail) – they must fly to different countries at certain times of year.
18. Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many (migrating - snorkeling - sailing) water birds.
19. It is an important habitat and people must (protect - hurt - damage) it.
20. Lara loves (taking - snorkeling - cooking) photos underwater.
21. The Sinai (City - Peninsula- Mountain) is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather.
22. The Ras Mohammed National (Zoo - Stadium - Park) on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit.



12 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We .... (must) swim here because there might be crocodiles!
2. You .... (mustn't) respect nature.
3. The birds often must .... (flying) very long distances.
4. We must .... (bringing) a tent.
5. They .... (must) travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.
6. It is an important habitat and people .... (mustn't) protect it.
7. If he .... (have) an important exam next term, he will study for it.
8. If you go to bed late tonight, you .... (not / get up) early tomorrow.
9. If she plays football for two hours, she .... (be) tired!
10. If Ali .... (not feel) thirsty, he won't buy juice.
11. We will miss the deadline if we .... (not / work) together.
12. I was hungry, ... (but) I made a sandwich.
13. I planned to watch a movie, ... (and) my friends called me to go out.
14. Peter is crying .... (so) he has failed his exams.
15. The room was messy, ... (because) I started cleaning it.
16. We saw turtles, pelicans, ... (but) lizards when we went wildlife-watching.

13 Choose the correct answer: (must - mustn't)

1. We (can't - must - mustn't) respect nature.
2. You (mustn't - must - can't) scare birds or animals.
3. You (can - mustn't - must) leave trash in the desert.
4. He (must - can - mustn't) be careful in the natural environment.
5. You (can't - mustn't - must) walk to school today because there are no buses.
6. We (can - mustn't - must) walk in the desert when it's hot.
7. She (can't - must - mustn't) brush her teeth before bed.
8. You (should - must - mustn't) tell anyone my secret.





9. You (can't - must - mustn't) wash your hands before eating.
10. We (can't - must - mustn't) be quiet in the library.

14 Choose the correct answer: (If)

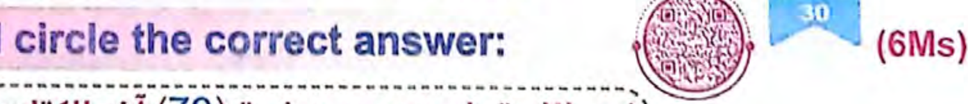
1. If I (have - has - had) an important exam next term, I will study for it.
2. If we do not work together, we will (miss - missing - missed) the deadline!
3. If it (raining - rain - rains) tomorrow, we will stay at home.
4. If I get good grades, I will (get - gets - getting) a new phone.
5. If we hurry, we (aren't - won't - can't) miss the bus.
6. If you help me with my task, I (would - will - can) help you with yours.
7. If you (don't - won't - wouldn't) eat your vegetables, you won't get dessert.
8. If you practice every day, you will (improves - improve - improving) your skills.
9. If the weather (is - was - are) good, we'll go for a hike in the mountains.
10. If the train is delayed, we (would - will - won't) have to find another way to get to the airport.

15 Choose the correct answer: (Conjunctions)

1. It was raining, (but - because - so) I brought an umbrella.
2. I love dogs, (but - because - so) I'm allergic to them.
3. I'm tired (but - because - so) I stayed up late.
4. I studied hard, (but - because - so) I got the full mark in the exam.
5. It's sunny outside, (but - because - so) it's still very cold.
6. She was happy (but - because - so) she got high marks.
7. The cake was delicious, (but - because - so) I had another slice.
8. I wanted to go to the beach, (but - because - so) it started to rain.

Unit 10 Test 4

Total 30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (70) آخر الكتاب.

1. There are lots of different (habitats - countries - seas - parks) in Egypt.
2. It is good for everybody if we (damage - hurt - throw - protect) these habitats.
3. We mustn't (protect - leave - waste - save) water or drop litter.

4. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut (up - down - above - inside) trees.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. We can (rewrite - recycle - cycle - correct) paper, so people don't cut down trees.
2. In the Red Sea, you can see (fish - coral - dolphins - snorkeling) reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks.
3. (Guidebook - Setting - Accommodation - Snorkeling) is somewhere you stay.
4. Eco-tourism is more (harmful - awful - terrible - sustainable) than vacations which don't care about the environment.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

journeys - weather - nests - migrate - bird-watching

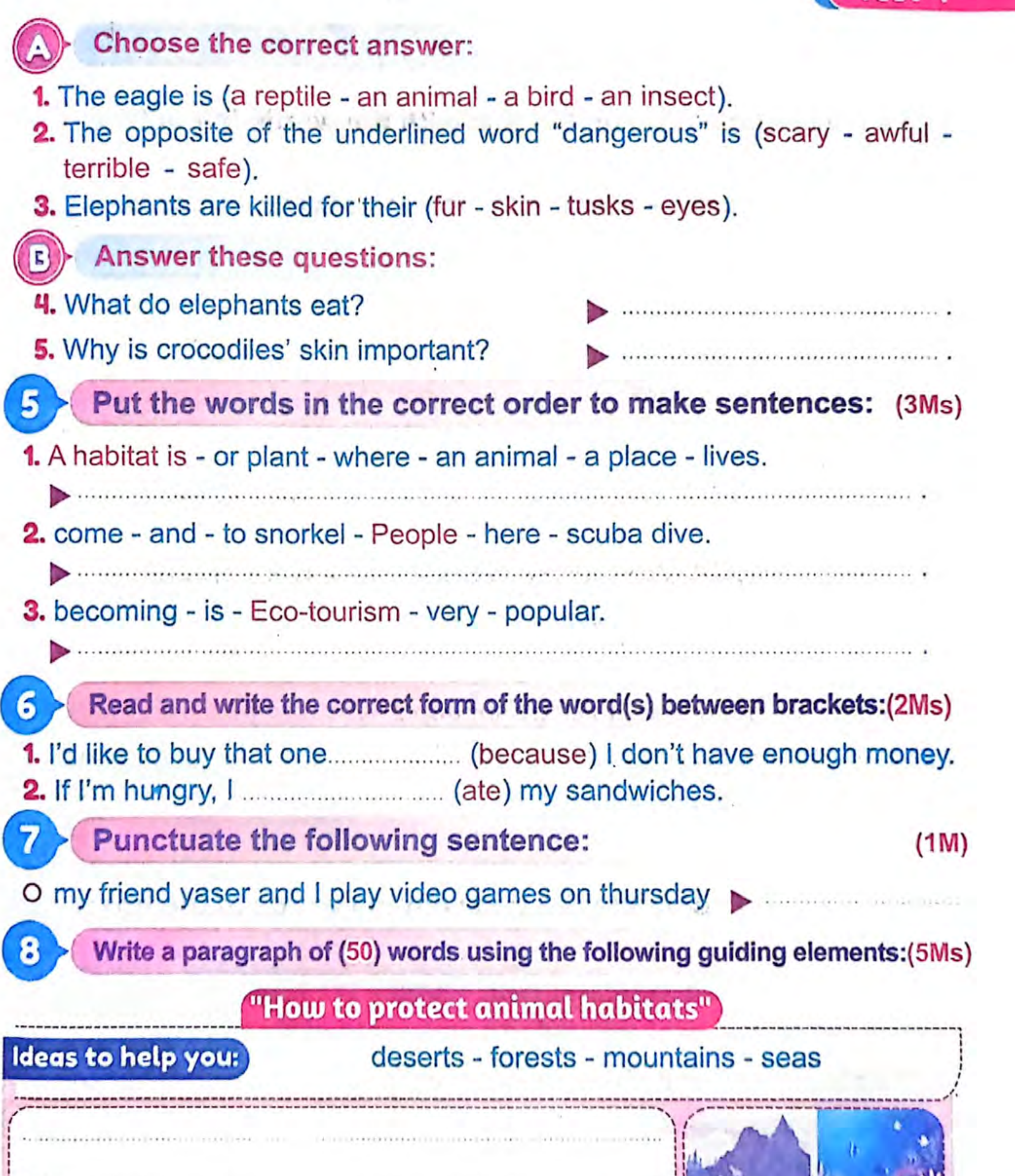
Many people are starting to visit Egypt for wildlife and ① .... There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds ② .... – they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer ③ .... The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their ④ .... go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Elephants live in Africa and Asia. The elephant is the largest of land animals. They have large ears and long trunks. They live together and feed mainly on grass. For a long time, elephants have helped people. They can carry things from place to place. Elephants are in danger as man is hunting them for their tusks.

The eagle is considered the king of birds. It lives on top of mountains. It is a large, powerful bird. The eagle is in danger as a result of egg collectors and gamekeepers.

Crocodiles are the most powerful and dangerous reptiles. They live in Africa, Asia, America and Australia. Some of them are more than twenty feet long. Crocodiles are hunted for skin which makes fine leather that's made into beautiful belts, shoes and bags.



A Choose the correct answer:

1. The eagle is (a reptile - an animal - a bird - an insect).
2. The opposite of the underlined word "dangerous" is (scary - awful - terrible - safe).
3. Elephants are killed for their (fur - skin - tusks - eyes).

B Answer these questions:

4. What do elephants eat? ▶ ....
5. Why is crocodiles' skin important? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. A habitat is - or plant - where - an animal - a place - lives.
   ▶ ....
2. come - and - to snorkel - People - here - scuba dive.
   ▶ ....
3. becoming - is - Eco-tourism - very - popular.
   ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

1. I'd like to buy that one.................. (because) I don't have enough money.
2. If I'm hungry, I .... (ate) my sandwiches.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- my friend yaser and I play video games on thursday ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:(5Ms)

"How to protect animal habitats"

Ideas to help you: deserts - forests - mountains - seas

....
....
....
....
....

Term 2

Revision on Unit 11

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

environment - plastic - volunteer - recycle - citizens

There are lots of ways you can ① .... to help your community. You must protect the ② .... and reduce waste. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, ③ .... them. Let's all be good ④ .... and make the world a better place!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

socialize - Volunteering - confidence - skills - realize

Life skills are things you learn for a happy life. When you volunteer, you help others and learn important ① .... To ② .... means making friends and talking with people. This builds ③ ...., making you feel good about yourself. ④ .... is a great way to grow these life skills for a brighter future.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

garden - habitats - volunteered - trash - support

Hi, I'm Tamer. At school, we started a project called "Community Help". We all had to choose something we could do to ① .... other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable ② .... in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people ③ .... to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' ④ .... are safer.





4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Fundraising - give back - volunteer - confidence - socialize

Hi, my name is Rawan. I've some advice for teenagers about volunteering. You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to ① .... and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you ② .... It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. ③ .... helps charities get the money they need. It's good to ④ .... to the place where you live.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

joysticks - controller - button - action - console

Hi, I'm Amira and this is my new games console. This is the ① .... which I use to play the game. That is the home ② .... which takes me back to the menu. There are ③ .... buttons, too. I use them to tell my character to run, jump, or do other actions. These parts are called the ④ .... They help me move my character around. I really enjoy playing games.

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

painted - donated - nicer - hospital - sick

My name is Ibrahim. My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the ① .... She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are ② .... My friends and I ③ .... lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents ④ .... lots of toys, too. We took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.



7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. a broken - He - found - with - a bird - wing.
▶ ....
2. in - born - was - Fareeda Hassan - Alexandria.
▶ ....
3. race - running - in the - Dalia - first - came.
▶ ....
4. helps - the money - they need - get - Fundraising - charities.
▶ ....
5. children - Rawan - Why - does - helping - like?
▶ .... ?
6. console - new - games - Is - your - this?
▶ .... ?
7. a multi-grip - the old - people - Why - use - do?
▶ .... ?
8. to - protect - Nesma - her eyes - wears sunglasses.
▶ ....
9. Rahma - to help - her relax - listens to - music.
▶ ....
10. a game - Do - you - play - want to - with me?
▶ .... ?
11. learned - She - quickly - the rules - the.
▶ ....
12. the - waste - environment - Reducing - helps.
▶ ....
13. lemonade - They - to - the market - sell - make - in.
▶ ....
14. children - Helping - happy - makes - me.
▶ ....
15. well - My - English - sister - speaks.
▶ ....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. mom is using an app to learn french
▶ ....

2. adel went to cairo to see his friends
▶ ....

3. is this your new games console, amira
▶ ....

4. why does rawan like helping children
▶ ....

5. when did fareeda first start volunteering
▶ ....

6. mr ibrahim waited patiently for the train to arrive
▶ ....

7. maged s picture of a horse is excellent
▶ ....

8. dalida volunteered happily at the children s day center
▶ ....

9. charlie ate chicken cheese and chips
▶ ....

10. fareeda hassan was born in alexandria
▶ ....

9 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. (Fundraising - Volunteering - Socializing) helps charities get the money they need.
2. We use the (grabber - multi-grip - nature camera) to take off the tops of glass bottles.
3. When you press the (home - grabber - multi-grip) button, it takes you back to the menu.
4. The buttons and joysticks are for playing a (sport - game - toy).
5. We should (think - grow - support) poor people in our community.



6. I will (participate - respect - protect) in the volunteer event.
7. The (button - joystick - controller) is something you press to make something happen.
8. At school, we started (out - up - to) a project called Community Help.
9. My mom sometimes helps (on - out - for) at the school library.
10. A (volunteer - doctor - nurse) does a job or activity and doesn't take any money for it.
11. We use a (grabber - multi-grip - nature camera) to film wildlife.
12. We wear gloves to (invent - protect - put) our hands.
13. To (review - organize - socialize) means to spend time with people in a friendly way.
14. We use a (nature camera - multi-grip - grabber) to pick up the trash.
15. My favorite bird is the (sparrow - fish - turtle).
16. You were very helpful. I will give you a (charity - reward - fundraising).
17. We have to (redo - rewrite - recycle) plastic bottles.
18. He uses a (stick - controller - camera) to play video games.
19. I looked (before - like - after) my neighbors' pet cat when they went on vacation.
20. To (participate - protect - volunteer) means to do a job or activity and not take any money for it.
21. To (protect - donate - respect) means to give something away to help a person or organization



10 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Participate means .... (too) take part in something.
2. I wanted to.................... (helps) children in my school.
3. The sports club is .... (at) Thursdays.
4. She wears gloves .... (because) protect her hands.
5. He uses nature camera to .... (filming) wildlife.

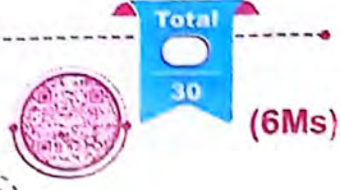
6. They walked .... (quick) in the garden.
7. He shouted .... (angry) in the street.
8. Sherif opened the door .... (quiet) because his little brother was sleeping.
9. They use the multi-grip to.................... (taking) off the tops.
10. You should be .... (carefully) when you cross the road.
11. My grandpa is very .... (kindly). He always helps the poor.
12. Mr Ahmed waited .... (patient) for the train to arrive.
13. Dalia plays the piano .... (beautiful).
14. I bought a card .... (too) send to my grandma.
15. Fareeda went to university to .... (studied) social sciences.

11 Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. She learned the rules (quickly - nice - happy).
2. He is shouting (angrily - quiet - quick).
3. I learned how to play chess (good - well - slow).
4. You should wear a jacket to (protecting - protect - protects) you from the cold weather.
5. Mom is using an app to (learned - learning - learn) French.
6. My uncle went to Cairo (to visit - visits - visiting) his friend.
7. Kareem listens to music (helps - to help - helped) him relax.
8. Mona came first in the running race. She runs really (quiet - fast - bad).
9. Ali hates playing basketball. He plays really (badly - fast - angry).
10. Mayar opened the door (good - quietly - hard) because her little sister was sleeping.
11. Amira's picture of a garden is great! She draws very (bad - well - angry).
12. Farah traveled by bus to (saw - seen - see) her cousins.
13. We bought some chips (eats - to eat - eating) during the movie.
14. They started a project called "Community Help" (to - because - for) support other people in their community.
15. He is wearing sunglasses (to - for - because) it's sunny today.



Unit 11 Test 5



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

(نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (71) آخر الكتاب.)

1. It's important to (read - volunteer - offer- help) the community.
2. Volunteering isn't boring. It's (interesting - polite - kind - sick).
3. Help people who are old or (young - healthy - surprised - sick).
4. You can offer to do their (homework - research - charity - shopping) or do jobs for them at home.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. They use the (grabber - multi-grip - nature camera - gloves) to film wildlife.
2. A (button - game - joystick - screen) is something you press to make something happen.
3. You should (recycle - redo - rewrite - replay) plastic bottles.
4. We (collect - cut - connect - communicate) trash in black bags.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

installed - film - project - record - gloves

Hi, my name is Hamza. We're doing a wildlife ① .... at school, and my teacher ② .... two of these in the forest. We're using them to ③ .... wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we ④ .... how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

In the past, life was <u>different</u>. People were poor and life was difficult, but they were happy. There wasn't a metro. There weren't lots of cars and tall buildings. There were small houses to live in. But there was healthy food to eat. Life was healthy, calm and quiet. They had time to play. They had time to rest. They had time to sit and speak with each other. I think life in the past was happier than life today.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Life was (easy - noisy - quiet - bad) in the past.
2. People were (happy - sad - angry - rich) in the past.
3. The opposite of the underlined word "different" is (difficult - near - far - similar).

B Answer these questions:

4. Where did people in the past live? ▶ ....
5. Was there a metro in the past? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. a reward - I - want - you - to - give. ▶ ....
2. football - Youssef - fantastic - is - at. ▶ ....
3. people - some - want to - What - grow - did? ▶ .... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

1. Kareem was late, so he ran .... (quick) to school.
2. I bought a card to .... (sending) to my grandma.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- i went to the sports center on monday ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Sama: (5Ms)

Tell her about an interesting party you went to. Tell her what the party was, what you did there, what you ate and who you met. Your name is Tamara and your email address is tamara@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is sama@gmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....

....

.................,

....

Part 2

Revision Tests



Revision Test 1

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)



1 Read and complete the dialogue: (10Ms)

artifacts - museum - gold - made - friends

Dalia : Hi, Noura. How was your weekend?

Noura : Hi, Dalia. It was great! I went outside!

Dalia : Where did you go?

Noura : I went to the ① ....

Dalia : Who did you go with?

Noura : I went with my ② ....

Dalia What did you see there?

Noura : I saw many interesting ③ ....

Dalia : Did you see any statues?

Noura : Of course. I found a room that has lots of animal statues.

Dalia : I know that the Ancient Egyptians made lots of animal statues. What were they ④ .... of?

Noura : They were made of ⑤ .... and silver.

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (10Ms)

1. creative - modern - amazing - materials
2. character - ending - happen - narrator
3. passed - told - said - found
4. sheep - village - wolf - cat
5. market - museum - store - journey

3 Choose the correct answer: (10Ms)

1. Birds make (tents - nets - nests) for their babies.
2. I like visiting (historical - history - historian) places.
3. A (guidebook - notebook - math book) gives tourists information about a place.
4. We should (protect - participate - grow) in the volunteer event.
5. The home (joystick - stick- button) takes you to the menu.

6. You should speak (quiet - loud- quietly) in the class.
7. She didn't (eating - eats - eat) her breakfast.
8. The books are (next - in - in front) the bag.
9. This story is not funny (quite - at all - very).
10. I enjoy (made - makes - making) up stories.

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

Hi, my name is Adel. I like playing games very much. My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

A Answer these questions:

1. What does Adel like?
▶ ....
2. What are Adel's favorite games?
▶ ....
3. How long does Adel play on the weekend?
▶ ....

B Choose the correct answer:

4. Adel's favorite games are ones where he (builds - draws - shares) cities.
5. Adel has made a really big city using different (bricks - animals - plants).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (10Ms)

1. good - are - What - at - you?
▶ .... ?
2. grandparents - My - sea - the - lived -by.
▶ ....
3. the club - often - How - do - go to - you?
▶ .... ?

4. enjoyed - Ali - market - the - at - shopping.

▶ ....

5. hopscotch - good - think - I - is.

▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"My vacation last year"

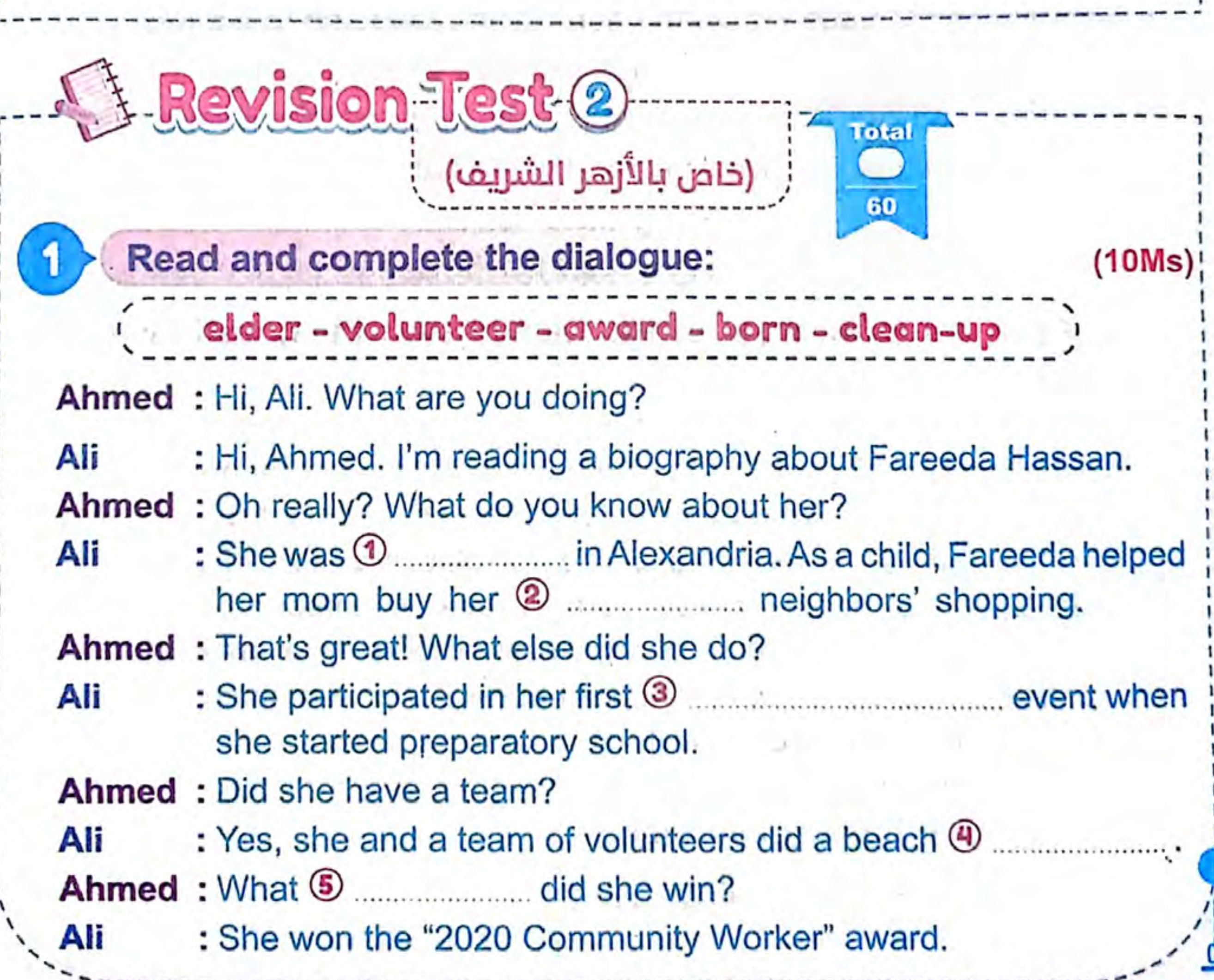
Ideas to help: snorkel safari - underwater photography - sailing - coral reefs - colored fish

....

....

....

....



Revision Test ②

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Total ..... / 60

1 Read and complete the dialogue: (10Ms)

elder - volunteer - award - born - clean-up

Ahmed : Hi, Ali. What are you doing?

Ali : Hi, Ahmed. I'm reading a biography about Fareeda Hassan.

Ahmed : Oh really? What do you know about her?

Ali : She was ① .... in Alexandria. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her ② .... neighbors' shopping.

Ahmed : That's great! What else did she do?

Ali : She participated in her first ③ .... event when she started preparatory school.

Ahmed : Did she have a team?

Ali : Yes, she and a team of volunteers did a beach ④ ....

Ahmed : What ⑤ .... did she win?

Ali : She won the "2020 Community Worker" award.

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (10Ms)

1. damage	- preserve	- cover	- hard
2. baboon	- statue	- monkey	- hippo
3. castle	- silver	- gold	- gemstone
4. marbles	- train set	- beat	- action figure
5. grandparents	- journalist	- father	- mother

3 Choose the correct answer: (10Ms)

1. I love (reading - sailing - flying) my boat.
2. She is a great (moral - narrator - setting). She always tells us stories.
3. He is very (careless - successful - helpless). He always gets high marks in the exam.
4. We should (replay - rewrite - recycle) paper to protect our environment.
5. Many birds (damage - migrate - hurt) to find food and make nests.
6. I want to (visits - visiting - visit) my grandparents.
7. When you go camping, you (mustn't - can't - must) take a tent with you.
8. My school is (next - between - front) to the park.
9. They (was - were - are) walking in the street.
10. She was (swims - swimming - swam) in the sea when she saw a shark.

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:(10Ms)

Hi, I'm Shady. I'm doing research on how to be a good citizen. I think you should be polite and kind to your neighbors. You should help people who are old or sick. You should protect the environment by reducing waste. You shouldn't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them. I think volunteering at a local charity event or help out on a community project is a great idea to help the community. Volunteering isn't boring. It's interesting. You'll be surprised how much you enjoy it.

A Answer these questions:



1. What is Shady doing research on?

▶ ....

2. What should we do with our neighbors?

▶ ....

3. How can we protect the environment?

▶ ....

C Choose the correct answer:

4. If you have plastic bottles at home, (rewrite - redo - recycle) them.
5. Volunteering isn't boring. It's (difficult - interesting - unkind).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (10Ms)

1. Younis - tennis - playing - hates.

▶ ....

2. Rawan's - is - What - teenagers - advice for?

▶ .... ?

3. bad - for - is - animals - What?

▶ .... ?

4. birds - build - don't - Singing - nests.

▶ ....

5. do - Why - dislike - you - surfing?

▶ .... ?

6 Write an email to your friend Tarek: (10Ms)

Tell him about your favorite toy when you were younger. What is it? Where did you play with it? Can you play with it now? Your email address is amir@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is tarek@gmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....
................,
....

Term 2





Total 30

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

(نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (71) آخر الكتاب.)

1. Volunteers are people who (support - donate - participate - volunteer) money and other things to support charities.
2. Volunteers usually support (charities - activities - unities - realities).
3. Volunteers participate in volunteer (habitats - skills - classes - events).
4. I think it's very important to be (kind - rude - useless - ugly) to people and animals.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Did you have a (show - go - draw - graph) on your old rollerblades?
2. Birds always (bear - tear - hatch - look) eggs.
3. When people (respect - hurt - waste - damage) the environment, they want to protect it.
4. We use the (nature camera - controller - multi-grip - grabber) to pick up the trash.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

silver – statues – trade – durable – jewelry

There weren't many silver mines in Egypt, so we think they brought it from other countries through ① .... They started using ② .... from around 4,500 years ago. They used it to make ③ .... and mirrors. They also used sheet silver to decorate statues because silver is not very ④ .... Sadly, the salts in the tombs destroyed a lot of it, so we cannot see very much of it today.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one of the most interesting things they traded. They first found metal in rocks. Metal was harder than stone, and they could melt and form it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons so that they could hunt and grow food. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and art

to sell. Silver was also used, but it was rarer. They got silver through trade with other countries.

A **Choose the correct answer:**

1. The Ancient Egyptians (fought - traded- played - thought) with other countries.
2. They could melt and (heat - extract - mine - form) metal into different shapes.
3. Silver was also used, but it was (rarer - smaller - cheaper - easier).

B **Answer these questions:**

4. Where did the Ancient Egyptians first find metal? ▶ ....
5. What did they use metal for? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. a reward - I - want - you - to - give. ▶ ....
2. is - Why - eco-tourism - idea - a good? ▶ .... ?
3. story - are going - You - to write - a short. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

1. Ghada prefers .... (play) board games to skipping.
2. Let's .... (unsend) the message. We want to send it again.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- people go bird-watching in egypt ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Khaled: (5Ms)

Tell him about your final revision tests and how you get ready for them. Your email address is seif@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is khaled@gmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,

....
....
.................,
....

Revision Test ④

Total 30

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)



(نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (71) آخر الكتاب.)

1. Fareeda Hassan was born in (Cairo - Aswan - Alexandria - Tanta) in 1994.
2. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in (four - five - six - seven) cities in Egypt.
3. She won the "2020 Community (Player - Worker - Teacher - Farmer)" award.
4. Today, Fareeda Hassan runs a charity for (women - girls - men - children).

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. I love playing video games, so I've got a new games (rollerblades - skateboard - console - graphics).
2. Eco-tourism is designed to (harm - protect - hurt - damage) nature.
3. My neighbor has always been (helpless - unkind - unhappy - kind) to us. She used to help my mom.
4. (Craftsmen - Guides - Vets - Farmers) are people who make good tools with their hands.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

rocks - economy - Ancient - rarer - Gold

In ① .... Egypt, they used lots of metals. ② .... was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell. Silver was also used, but it was ③ .... Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptians ④ .... to improve.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean



coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Many water birds eat (seas - fish - oases - coral reefs).
2. North Africa is (snowy - colder - cooler - hotter) than Europe.
3. Many birds leave northern European countries and fly to (Egypt - China - France - Italy).

B Answer these questions:

4. What are the birds that migrate to Egypt? ▶ ....
5. Why do many birds migrate? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. loves - Nada - volunteer - events - in - to participate. ▶ ....
2. proverb - does - this - What - mean? ▶ .... ?
3. birds - Migrating - fly - distances - very long. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

1. The Ancient Egyptians .... (make) many artifacts.
2. This answer is .... (correct). It's wrong.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- tourism is important for egypt ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:(5Ms)

"My favorite game"

Ideas to help:
- ▶ What is it?
- ▶ Why do you like it?
- ▶ Is it an inside or outside game?
- ▶ Who do you play it with?

....
....
....
....

Term 2



Revision Test 5





1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (71) آخر الكتاب.

1. Hugo is from (England - China - Egypt - France).
2. Hugo loves (buying - sailing - sinking - selling) his boat.
3. Hugo's favorite color is (blue - gray - green - red).
4. Hugo was sailing when I saw a message in a (bottle - box - book - ball) in the water!

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. People (mummify - damage - preserve - hurt) food in the fridge.
2. My little sister played with a (skateboard's - train's - marble's - doll's) house.
3. The (narrator - setting - moral - ending) of the story is France in 2005.
4. Many birds (migrate - drive - snorkel - sail) to find warmer weather in winter.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

toys - making up - outside - figures - older

When she was little, Amina really liked games that used a lot of imagination. She was very good at ① .... stories. She had a doll's house, some cuddly ② ...., and some action ③ .... Her sister Nour really enjoyed playing ④ .... when she was younger. She liked running, climbing, and playing tennis. She was quite good at football, too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Goha rode a donkey, and his son walked behind him. They passed by a group that said, "Look at this man, whose heart is cruel. He rides and lets his son walk. Goha got down to walk and had his son ride. He passed by a group of people who said, "Look at this impolite boy riding a donkey and letting his father walk." So Goha and his son both rode the donkey and continued on their way. They passed by a group that said, "Look at this cruel man riding with his son. They are not kind to the donkey." So Goha and his son got down from the donkey and walked behind it. They passed by a new group that said, "Look at these two idiots who are tired of walking and in front of them is a donkey that they do not ride." After passing them,



Goha and his son carried the donkey. They walked with it and passed a new group, who laughed at them and said, "Look at these two madmen carrying the donkey instead of riding it." Just then, they put it down. Goha said to his son, "Listen, my son, you can not win the approval of all people. It's impossible to please all people."

A Choose the correct answer:

1. A group of people said, "Look at this man, whose heart is (cruel - kind - good - nice). He rides and lets his son walk."
2. Another group of people said, "Look at this (good - polite - kind - impolite) boy riding a donkey and letting his father walk."
3. We can't win the (money - approval - disapproval - kindness) of all people.

B Answer these questions:

4. Who does the underlined word "They" refer to? ▶ ....
5. What is the moral of the story? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. to - migrate - continents - other - Eagles. ▶ ....
2. did - How - her - help - neighbors - Fareeda? ▶ .... ?
3. football - think - I - so - is - exciting. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2Ms)

1. When did the Ancient Egyptians .... (started) using iron?
2. Youssef is fantastic at football and plays very .... (good).

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

○ if i am hungry, i'll eat a snack ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Asmaa: (5Ms)

Tell her your reply to her last email. Tell her the answer to her question about the place you would like to visit in the world and why. Your email address is doha@school.net and your friend's email address is asmaa@gmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....
....



Revision Test 6



Total 30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

(نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (71) آخر الكتاب.)

1. Adam loves visiting the (zoo - desert - club - park).
2. Adam saw lots of (coral reefs - fish - crocodiles - wildlife) when the sun went down.
3. They'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so they must bring a (bird - mat - tent - bed).
4. Many animals live on the (sand - water - river - sea) in the desert.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. The artifacts in the museum were (fascinating - bad - dangerous - hard). We liked them.
2. We can plant flowers and plants to (hurt - waste - help - damage) animal habitats.
3. We (collect - connect - communicate - correct) trash in black bags.
4. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and (climb - snorkel - sail - camp) in tents at night.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

knee - fun - skateboards - playing - hurts

I loved going to the park and ① .... with my friends. They had ② ...., and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and ③ .... pads. It really ④ .... if you fall off a skateboard!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

When I was younger, I had a cool train set. I loved playing with my train set and making the trains go fast! My sister Jana had a cool doll's house with lots of tiny furniture. She loved playing with her doll's house. My friend Hamdi had action figures, and they were awesome. My brother Ibrahim had a big collection of marbles, and we loved playing games with them. We also loved playing board games sometimes. My cuddly toy

was my favorite toy when I went to bed. My friends and I liked playing with rollerblades and skateboards, and we raced a lot. I tried my best to beat them and be the winner in the races!

A **Choose the correct answer:**

1. He loved playing with his train (sit - set - setting - shapes) and making the trains go fast!
2. His sister Jana had a cool (figure's - train's - toy's - doll's) house with lots of tiny furniture.
3. His friend Hamdi had action (figures - trains - dolls - sets), and they were awesome.

B **Answer these questions:**

4. What did his brother Ibrahim have? ▶ ....
5. What was his favorite toy? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. didn't - Asser - train sets - at all - like. ▶ ....
2. often - does - volunteer - Tamer - How? ▶ .... ?
3. to find - migrate - Many birds - hot - weather. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

1. I was reading a book .... (where) my dad came home.
2. The chair is in .... (behind) of the desk.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- when does hana play her favorite game ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:(5Ms)

"What did you do yesterday?"

Ideas to help: get up - breakfast - school - meet - lessons - play

....
....
....
....

Term 2





1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

(نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (72) آخر الكتاب.)

1. Ali was (shopping - working - selling - buying) with his parents at the market.
2. Ali saw a stall that sold (wood - cheese - milk - toys).
3. Ali's (mom - brother - dad - sister) came to see the toys.
4. He liked the (train - animal - car - boat), so he bought it.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. (Guidebook - Sailing - Eco-tourism - Snorkeling) is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment.
2. A (joystick - multi-grip - button - grabber) is something you can move in different directions to control a computer game.
3. The (ending - character - narrator - setting) of the story about the treasure is very interesting. All characters were happy at the end.
4. When you (dislike - adore - hate - damage) something, you love it very much.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

gold - excited - artifacts - durable - granite

The Ancient Egyptians made many things in the past. They made a lot of ① .... The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. They used ② .... to make the artifacts. They also used ③ .... to build the Pyramids. They used valuable and ④ .... materials.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Do you know why the ancient Egyptians built the pyramids? They didn't build them to be a part of the history of Egypt. Also they didn't build them for tourists to see in the future. In fact, the ancient Egyptians thought that there was another life after death. So, they made those wonderful tombs which we call "the pyramids" for their kings.They put the foods, jewels and gold of the king with him in his tomb to find everything he needed when he woke up. They also were afraid of thieves to steal these things.

So, they built the Sphinx in front of the pyramids to frighten thieves. The Sphinx is a head of a man and a body of a lion.

A **Choose the correct answer:**

1. The underlined word "them" refers to the (tourists - Egyptians - pyramids - tombs).
2. They built the (tombs - Sphinx - walls - pyramids) because they were afraid of thieves.
3. The Sphinx is a head of a man and a body of a (tiger - fox - lion - leopard).

B **Answer these questions:**

4. Why did the ancient Egyptians build the pyramids? ▶ ....
5. What did they put inside the pyramids? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. to - is - next - the board - The calendar. ▶ ....
2. Where - birds - can - these - you - see? ▶ .... ?
3. by bus - her cousins - see - Farah - to - traveled. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

1. We enjoy .... (make up) stories for our action figures.
2. Amr .... (is working) when Granddad sent him a message.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- is this your new games console amira ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Nesma: (5Ms)

Tell her about the story of an interesting book you read. Your email address is hoda@school.net and your friend's email address is nesma@gmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
................,
....

Revision Test 8

Total
30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

(نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (72) آخر الكتاب.)

1. The Ancient Egyptians started using (iron - plastic - glass - wood) more than 5,000 years ago.
2. Some of their early iron was from (statues - tombs - meteorites - museums).
3. Ancient Egyptian (doctors - teachers - archaeologists - craftsmen) made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb.
4. Iron was more (precious - delicious - kind - cheap) than gold because it was rarer.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. I really like the (ending - setting - moral - characters) in the story, especially the talking cuddly toy.
2. Granite is a very (helpless - non-durable - durable - wet) metal, so it lasts for a long time.
3. The sea is very clear and there's a coral (reef - boat - mountain - fish). It's beautiful!
4. I made up lots of games for my action (rollerblades - figures - marbles - trains). They are my favorite toys.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

close – wildlife – habitats – quietly – damage

I love watching birds and other animals in their natural ① .... However, people mustn't get too ② .... to the birds, because it can make them frightened. It's important to speak and move quietly when you are near ③ .... I think people must be careful not to ④ .... the environment when they travel

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Amr loves sports. His favourite sport is football. He watches football matches in clubs and on TV. Now, he practises it every day. He plays it at the school playground and at the club as well. He has big posters of football players on the walls of his room. He likes to read all the magazines on this sport.

He is a good player. He is one of the best players in his school team. His team has just won an important match. The goal which Amr scored helped the team to get the golden cup last month.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. There are some (postcards - posters - presents - emails) on Amr's bedroom walls.
2. Amr (always - sometimes - never - rarely) plays football.
3. The opposite of the underlined word "the best" is (the worse - the worst - the better - the good).

B Answer these questions:

4. Where does Amr practice his favorite sport? ▶ ....
5. How often does Amr play football? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. board games - I - like - really - playing. ▶ ....
2. people - some - want to - What - grow - did? ▶ .... ?
3. lemonade - to - the market - in – They - sell – make. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

1. Soha closed the window .... (quiet), as everyone was asleep.
2. I liked .... (skip), but I wasn't very good at it.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- the ancient egyptians liked to use gold ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:(5Ms)

"My favorite pet"

Ideas to help:
- What is it?
- What does it eat?
- Where does it sleep?
- Why do you like it?

....

....

....

....

Term 2









1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

(نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (72) آخر الكتاب.)

1. Mustafa is in grade (five - four - six - seven).
2. He went to the (zoo - museum - club - park).
3. Mustafa met a (farmer - teacher - policeman - guide) in the museum.
4. The artifacts are made of (gold - iron - copper - bronze).

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. People (mummify - damage - preserve - hurt) food in the fridge.
2. My little sister played with a (skateboard's - train's - marble's - doll's) house.
3. The (narrator - setting - moral - ending) of the story is France in 2005.
4. Many birds (migrate - drive - snorkel - sail) to find warmer weather in winter.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

setting – ending – story – review – characters

I'm writing a ① .... of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The ② .... is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the ③ .... – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. In the ④ .... of the story, they both carry the donkey!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Our baby brothers and sisters need help. They need someone to feed them, dress them, carry them, and keep them happy. All of us need our parents until we are grown ups. Also many kinds of young animals need their mother's help as well. They can't take care of themselves. Parents give us food, clothing and a home. <u>They</u> teach us many things and send us to school. They love us and we need that. We love them, too.



A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "They" refers to (teachers - parents - neighbors - babies).
2. Parents are (brothers and sisters - fathers and mothers - teachers - grandparents).
3. All of us need our parents until we are (elderly people - children - adults - babies).

B Answer these questions:

4. What kind of help do babies need? ▶ ....
5. What do young animals need? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. Lama - put - painted - to - a picture - the exhibition – in. ▶ ....
2. could - to help - What - the environment - do - you? ▶ .... ?
3. different - are - in Egypt - There - habitats - lots of. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

1. If she .... (not finish) her work, she won't go out.
2. You .... (mustn't) respect nature.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- i went to the sports center on monday ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Dina: (5Ms)

Tell her your plans for the next summer vacation. What you would like to do, where you would like to go, and who you would like to meet. Your email address is reem@gmail.com and your friend's email address is dina@yahoo.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....,

....

....

.................,

....

Term 2



Revision Test 10



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (72) آخر الكتاب.

1. There are many different kinds of (birds - animals - insects - trees) all over the world.
2. The biggest bird in the world is the (eagle - ostrich - pelican - falcon).
3. The ostrich can run fast, but it can't (walk - hop - jump - fly)!
4. The smallest bird is the bee (kingfisher - flamingo - hummingbird - swift).

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Eco-tourism is more (harmful - terrible - sustainable - helpless) than traditional tourism.
2. The (moral - ending - setting - character) of the story about the monkey is that it's good to have fun.
3. Women like to wear things made of (plastic - paper - wood - gold). It is a valuable metal.
4. We're using the nature cameras to (photo - film - draw - paint) wildlife.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

gold - culture - artifacts - silver - granite

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many interesting ① .... to see. My brother and I were walking around when we found a room that had lots of animal statues. The Ancient Egyptians made lots of animal statues, because animals were very important in their ② .... First, we saw different statues in ③ .... and silver. Then we saw some in clay, stone, and ④ ...., too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Dolphins are very interesting animals. They look like fish, but there are some differences. Fish can live under water but dolphins can not. They can stay under water for a long time, but then have to come up because they breathe air. Fish lay eggs, but dolphins have living babies, they drink their mothers' milk like other animals.



Everyone likes to watch dolphins because they are clever and can learn to do many things. Some dolphins have learnt to pull a little boat.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Dolphins breathe (under water - air - like fish - in the bottom).
2. Dolphins' babies feed on (fish - reefs - plants - milk).
3. The opposite of the underlined word "interesting" is (exciting - boring - fantastic - fascinating).

B Answer these questions:

4. Why does everybody like to watch dolphins? ▶ ....
5. How do dolphins give birth? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. do - the - a multi-grip - use - Why - old people? ▶ .... ?
2. set - a train - was - toy - My favorite. ▶ ....
3. King Midas - did - What - wish - for? ▶ .... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

1. I .... (very) enjoyed riding my bike.
2. What was .... (happened) yesterday?

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- the mask of tutankhamun was found in his tomb ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:(5Ms)

"The ancient Egyptians"

Ideas to help: history - artifacts - pyramids - trade - games - sports

....

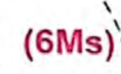
....

....

....

Revision Test 11





1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (72) آخر الكتاب.

1. Egypt is an amazing (town - city - country - village).
2. People can go (swimming - diving - snorkeling - relaxing) in the Red Sea.
3. People can go on a (valley - desert - sea - mountain) safari.
4. (Eco-tourist - Eco-tourism - Tourism - Tourist) is becoming very popular.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. People use the (multi-grip - sunglasses - nature camera - grabber) to film wildlife.
2. (Granite - Clay - Plastic - Glass) is a very hard and durable stone.
3. We (cry - laugh - sail - fly) when we hear or read something funny.
4. The (setting - moral - ending - narrator) is the time and place where a story happens..

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

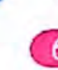
excited – reply – bottle – travel – message

Tom and his grandparents forgot about the message in a ① .... that they threw in the sea. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message. A man in France found the message and sent his ② .... They had a reply to their ③ .... in a bottle! Tom was very ④ .... Their message traveled a really long way!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

In our town, we have got a big park. It has lots of trees, flowers and grass. There are also lots of <u>benches</u> here and there. There are places for tennis and volleyball and a small restaurant. There's also a pond for small boats and a very small zoo.

But, for children, the best place in the park is the playground. There, they can swing and slide and go round and round for hours. During school hours, only the young chlidren are there, but in summer and on Fridays and Saturdays all the year, there are older children too.



A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "benches" means (seats - boats - toys - grass).
2. The best place in the park for young children is the (grass - restaurant - zoo - playground).
3. There's also a (pond - lake - river - beach) for small boats in the park.

B Answer these questions:

4. What sports can older children play in the park? ▶ ....
5. When do older children visit the park? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. can see - You - coral reefs - lots of fish - and. ▶ ....
2. My sister - a big - had - house - doll's. ▶ ....
3. advice - Rawan's - for - What - teenagers - is? ▶ .... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

1. If he saves enough money, he .... (buy) a new bike.
2. Nesma wears sunglasses to .... (protected) her eyes.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- who knows ras mohammed national park ▶ ....

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Farid: (5Ms)

Tell him about an eco-tourism vacation you have done with your family. Tell him where you went, where you stayed and what you saw and did there. Your email address is samir@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is farid@hotmail.com.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....
....

Term 2

Revision Test 12





1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)

(نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (72) آخر الكتاب.)

1. Playing is (bad - long - good - short) for us in lots of different ways.
2. When we play, we feel (sad - happy - boring - unhappy).
3. We also learn about the (environment - tourism - countryside - world) and ourselves.
4. When we play, we learn to (solve - happen - bring - make) problems and make friends.

2 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. The Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with (wood - granite - clay - paper) as it can last for a long time.
2. We wear (hats - helmets - caps - gloves) to protect our hands.
3. The (ending - character - narrator - setting) is the last part of a story.
4. People can (climb - drive - sail - cycle) on the Nile.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4Ms)

humans – artifact – carved – stories – intact

People have told stories for thousands of years. The Ancient Egyptians ① .... pictures to tell stories. The Ancient Egyptians made many artifacts in the past. An ② .... is an object that was made by ③ .... in the past. The Khufu solar ship is an artifact from Ancient Egypt. It is the world's oldest ④ .... ship.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping. Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event, delivering food boxes to families in the community.



In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here, she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Fareeda Hassan was born in (Cairo - Aswan - Alexandria - Giza) in 1994.
2. Fareeda started (kindergarten - primary preparatory - secondary - university) school in 2006.
3. The underlined word "her" refers to (dad - mom - grandpa - Fareeda).

B Answer these questions:

4. What did Fareeda and a team of volunteers do? ▶ ....
5. Why did Fareeda go to the university? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. Nadia - marbles - pretty - very - some - has ▶ ....
2. How - the message - find - did - they? ▶ .... ?
3. could - What - do - you - neighbors - for your? ▶ .... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:(2Ms)

1. My sister stopped .... (let) me share her doll's house because I broke it.
2. My classroom is .... (front) to the library.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- singing birds don't build nests ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:(5Ms)

"The Red Sea beaches"

Ideas to help: clean - blue water - play - swim - snorkel - water sports

....
....
....
....



Listening Scripts



Test

One of the most interesting things the Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries was metal! The Ancient Egyptians first found metal in rocks around 7,000 years ago. They heated the rocks and took out the metal parts. They learned that metal was harder than stone and that they could melt and make different shapes with it.



Test

Hi, I'm Hani. I started a project about toys and games on the weekend. It's really interesting! I thought hide and seek was fun. I was very good at hiding! I could hide for a very long time. I also really liked playing hopscotch with my friends. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares. Some of my friends preferred skipping. Some skipping games are so difficult!



Test

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers. I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green. You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!



Test

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects.






It's important to help the community. To do this, you should volunteer at a local charity event or help out on a community project. Volunteering isn't boring. It's interesting. You'll be surprised how much you enjoy it. Respect others. Be polite and kind to your neighbors. Help people who are old or sick. Call your neighbors to ask how you can help. You can offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home.



Volunteers are people who donate money and other things to support charities. They participate in volunteer events in their communities. They help the poor. Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer. I think it's very important to be kind to people and animals.



Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has helped many people. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.



My name is Hugo and I live in France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – a message in a bottle! It was from a boy called Tom. I enjoyed reading about his favorite things.



Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting the desert with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down - more animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.







Ali was shopping with his parents at the market. He saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed him how a train moved. Ali thought the toys were amazing. Ali's dad came to see the toys, too. He liked the train, so he bought it. He said Ali could play with it.



The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze. Amazingly, some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible. For them, iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.



Mustafa is student at a primary school. He is in grade six. He wanted to learn about Ancient Egyptian artifacts. So, he went on a school trip to the museum. He met a guide there. The guide showed him the artifacts. The artifacts are made of gold. Mustafa enjoyed his time there.



There are many different kinds of birds all over the world. Some of them are big and the others are small. The biggest bird in the world is the ostrich. It can be about 210 cm long. It can run fast, but it can't fly! The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird. It is about 5.5 cm long.



Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too.



Playing is good for us in lots of different ways. When we play, we feel happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends.



Part 1 The set Book

Unit (7)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:
1- artifacts 2- preserve 3- granite
4- durable

2 Read and complete the text:
1- Ancient 2- lasts 3- clay 4- tomb

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- Granite 2- clay 3- climate 4- valuable
5- artifacts 6- Gold 7- preserving 8- guide
9- durable 10- fascinating 11- granite

4 Read and write the correct form:
1- are 2- have 3- is 4- built
5- are 6- liked 7- made 8- is

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- The Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold.
2- Why do we have so many artifacts?
3- Ancient Egyptians made the Pyramids from granite.
4- What's your favorite Egyptian artifact?
5- Why are Tamer and Tamara at the museum?

6 Punctuate the following sentences:
1- Where are Tamer and Tamara?
2- We have a hot, dry climate in Egypt.
3- Why do Ancient Egyptians build great tombs?

7 Write an email:
From: hazem@yahoo.com
To: jack@gmail.com
Subject: Ancient Egyptian history and artifacts
Hi Jack!
I hope you're doing well. I wanted to share with you how Ancient Egyptian history and artifacts are great. I hope you're doing well! I wanted to tell you how amazing Ancient Egyptian history and artifacts are. We have wonderful pyramids and treasures! The treasures they left behind are amazing! We have mysterious tombs filled with treasures. You should come to visit Egypt soon with me We can explore together and learn so much. It'll be so much fun!
Let's plan it!
Lots of love
Hazem

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- pets 2- adored 3- produced 4- grain

2 Read and complete the text:
1- falcons 2- mummified 3- afterlife 4- statues

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- Grain 2- adore 3- Wisdom 4- mummify
5- adored 6- statue 7- mice 8- pets

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- were 2- was 3- Were 4- were
5- weren't 6- Did 7- Were 8- loved
9- ate 10- hurt 11- did 12- grew
13- Did 14- eat 15- keep 16- loved
17- didn't 18- grow

5 Read the text and answer:
1- cats 2- grain 3- hippos
4- They loved cats the most.
5- They were good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- loved 2- taught 3- became
4- represented 5- weren't 6- didn't
7- Were 8- was 9- Did 10- feed
11- believe 12- grow 13- adored
14- keep 15- have 16- had

7 Put the words in the correct order:
1- The Ancient Egyptians loved animals.
2- What did they feed their cats?
3- Rats didn't eat the grain.
4- Were there a lot of mummies?
5- I was a student at the local school.
6- Where did you grow up?

8 Write a paragraph:
"What did you do last week?"
Last week was fun! I went to school and learned new things. After school, I played tennis with my friends. It was so exciting! When I got home, I was tired, so I slept for an hour. Later, I had a delicious lunch with my family. It was a great week with school, sports, rest, and good food!





Lesson 3 Part 1

1 Read and complete the text:
1- traded 2- weapons 3- jewelry 4- rarer

2 Read and complete the text:
1- in 2- between 3- Under 4- on

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- Trade 2- Metal 3- weapon 4- Economy
5- weapons 6- Trade 7- silver 8- Craftsmen

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- between 2- in 3- next 4- between
5- in 6- between 7- on 8- under

5 Read and write the correct form:
1- next 2- between 3- front 4- in
5- between 6- on 7- in 8- found
9- find 10- traded

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Metal was harder than rocks.
2- Where is the eraser?
3- The library is next to the computer room.

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1- The Ancient Egyptians found metal around 7000 years ago.
2- Tutankhamun's mask was found in his tomb.
3- Where is the eraser?

Lesson 3 Part 2

1 Choose the correct answer:
1- rare 2- air 3- pear 4- tear
5- pair 6- wear 7- bear 8- share

2 Read and complete the text:
1- king 2- daughter 3- rose 4- castle

3 Read and write the correct form:
1- lived 2- wish 3- want 4- was
5- were 6- like 7- looks

4 Put the words in the correct order:
1- King Medas was a kind man.
2- I like walking in the fresh air.
3- What do you want to wear today?
4- This pear looks delicious.
5- What did King Medas wish for?

Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text:
1- meteorites 2- craftsmen 3- tomb 4- mined

2 Read and complete the text:
1- copper 2- heaven 3- precious 4- rarer

3 Read the text and answer:
1- dagger 2- copper 3- expensive
4- They started using iron more than 5,000 years ago.
5- Because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible.

4 Read and write the correct form:
1- start 2- made 3- were 4- find 5- was

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- There weren't many silver mines in Egypt.
2- What did they use iron for?
3- Ancient Egyptians worked with copper and bronze.
4- Where did they find the silver?

Unit (7) Test (1)
خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- artifacts 2- preserve 3- granite
4- durable 5- fascinating

2 Read and circle the odd one out:
1- climate → gold 2- pets → snakes
3- preserve → beautiful - nice
4- trip → on 5- stone → granite

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- fascinating 2- climate 3- adore
4- preserve 5- dagger 6- went 7- next
8- grow 9- were 10- between

4 Read the passage and answer:
1- He lived many years ago.
2- He loved three things more than anything else: his daughter, Marigold, his rose garden, and gold.
3- His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. 4- sick 5- castle

5 Reorder the words:
1- Tutankhamun's mask was found in his tomb.
2- The calendar is next to the board.
3- They used metal to make tools and weapons.
4- Cats are still popular pets in Egypt.
5- What did the Ancient Egyptians use silver for?

6 Write an email:
From: mazen@hotmail.com
To: tamer@school.net
Subject: The Ancient Egyptians
Dear Tamer,
Guess what? I learned about cool things the Ancient Egyptians used! They had silver for jewelry and decorations. Gold was for pharaohs and rich people. Copper and bronze made tools and statues. Iron was for weapons. Clay was used to make pottery, and they built things with stone. Isn't that awesome? I love learning about history! See you soon!
Mazen

Unit (7) Test (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- six 2- museum 3- guide 4- gold

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- statue 2- Clay 3- Economy 4- mummify

3 Read and complete the text:
1- Ancient 2- Gold 3- rarer 4- economy

4 Read the text and answer:
1- temple 2- Aswan 3- modern
4- It refers to the Ancient Egyptians.
5- There are the High Dam in Aswan, the Cairo Tower, the Cairo Stadium and the underground metro.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- What did King Midas wish for?
2- The books are on the shelves.
3- Did the Ancient Egyptians keep birds as pets?

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- made 2- front

7 Punctuate the sentences:
- What tools did the Ancient Egyptians use?

8 Write a paragraph:
"Keeping pets in Ancient Egypt and now"
The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom. There are thousands of mummified ibises in Saqqara alone. Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt. Other animals that people keep today include turtles, fish, and birds, which are, of course, much smaller and easier to look after than baboons and crocodiles.

Unit (8)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:
1- action 2- made up 3- doll's 4- game

2 Read and complete the text:
1- set 2- rollerblades 3- a go 4- marbles

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- beat 2- have 3- made 4- figures
5- set 6- doll's 7- rollerblades
8- skateboard 9- up 10- beat 11- board
12- skateboard 13- cuddly 14- action

4 Read and write the correct form:
1- visit 2- was 3- have 4- go 5- were

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- My favorite toy was a train set.
2- I could go really fast on my skateboard.
3-My old rollerblades are now too small for me.
4-Did you visit your grandma on the weekend?
5- My sister had a big doll's house.
6- I didn't have a train set.

6 Write an email:
From: rana@gmail.com
To: jana@yahoo.com
Subject: My old box of toys
Hi Jana!
How are you? I visited my grandparents on the weekend. I found a box of my old toys at their house. In it, there was an action figure. I loved playing with it! My favorite toy was a train set. My sister had a big doll's house. We both played with it. I don't know where it is now. I found my old rollerblades, though. The box was full of memories.
Talk to you soon,
Rana

Answer Key

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- seek 2- hide 3- hopscotch 4- skipping

2 Read and complete the text:
1- skateboards 2- helmet 3- pads 4- fall

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- really 2- quite 3- very 4- so 5- at all
6- really 7- really 8- at all 9- quite
10- playing 11- being 12- reading

4 Read the text and answer:
1- park 2- hurts 3- knee
4- He doesn't use it at all now because he has a bigger one.
5- His favorite toy was his skateboard.

5 Read and write the correct form:
1- very 2- really 3- at all 4- really 5- so
6- quite 7- really 8- really
9- playing 10- hiding

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- I really like playing board games.
2- Skateboarding is quite good.
3- I think football is so exciting.
4- Nadia has some very pretty marbles.
5- Asser didn't like train sets at all.

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Nadia really enjoys playing marbles on Fridays.
2- Does he enjoy reading adventure books?
3- Rania thinks skipping is better than hopscotch.
4- When Youssef was younger, his favorite toy was his skateboard.

8 Write an email:
From: hana@school.net
To: basma@gmail.com
Subject: The games I enjoyed when I was younger
Hi Basma!
I hope you are Ok. When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I also loved skipping. What about you?
Talk to you soon.
Hana

Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text:
1- shopping 2- market 3- stall 4- toys

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- stall 2- button 3- trunk 4- sail
5- stall 6- button 7- drought
8- laugh 9- daughters 10- How often

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- playing 2- being 3- reading 4- skipping
5- playing 6- running 7- going 8- flying
9- looking 10- skipping
11- playing 12- showing

4 Read and write the correct form:
1- playing 2- making up 3- letting
4- painting 5- flying 6- running

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- I enjoy looking at the market stalls.
2- They finished painting the posters.
3- We laugh when we play draughts.
4- I prefer playing with new toys.

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Ali was shopping with his parents.
2- Did Amal imagine flying in a plane?
3- On Saturday, Gehan likes playing with her new toys.
4- Is Ghada playing board games?

Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text:
1- amazing 2- console 3- playing 4- solve

2 Read and complete the text:
1- video 2- weekend 3- games 4- creative

3 Read the text and answer:
1- adventure 2- console 3- video
4- Because some of the images in modern video games are amazing.
5- He plays for about an hour on the weekend.

4 Read and write the correct form:
1- work 2- playing 3- is
4- have 5- is 6- playing





5 **Put the words in the correct order:**
1- How does this game work?
2- I love playing all kinds of games.
3- What's your favorite game?
4- Belal plays board games with his sister.
5- How many players are there?

6 **Write a paragraph:**
"My favorite game"
Hello! I'm Belal. My favorite games are video games. Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

Unit (8) Test (3)
خاص بالازهر الشريف

1 **Read and complete the dialogue:**
1- action 2- made 3- train
4- rollerblades 5- have

2 **Read and circle the odd one out:**
1- made up → cuddly toy
2- beat → board game 3- although → so
4- bought → enough 5- solve → solving

3 **Choose the correct answer:**
1- figure 2- creative 3- board 4- seek
5- console 6- really 7- playing
8- so 9- making 10- at all

4 **Read the passage and answer:**
1- She really liked games that used a lot of imagination. 2- She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.
3- She liked running, climbing and playing tennis. 4- stories 5- football

5 **Reorder the words:**
1- We didn't play board games.
2- What was your favorite toy?
3- Ali's dad came to see the toys.
4- I had rollerblades and a skateboard.
5- What were you good at?

6 **Write a paragraph:**
"Hide and seek"
Hide and seek is a very fun game. It is a very popular game, too. Children play it all over the world. They play it with their friends. All children except one hide, and the last one, the seeker, tries to find them. I was good at it! I could hide for a very long time.

Unit (8) Test (4)

1 **Listen and circle the correct answer:**
1- shopping 2- toys 3- dad 4- train

2 **Choose the correct answer:**
1- hopscotch 2- go 3- made 4- console

3 **Read and complete the text:**
1- playing 2- fun 3- knee 4- hurts

4 **Read the text and answer:**
1- two 2- exciting 3- afternoon
4- Four friends went to the stadium.
5- Each team tried to cross the other goal line with the ball.

5 **Put the words in the correct order:**
1- What ideas do you have?
2- Amal imagined flying in a plane.
3- Does he enjoy reading adventure books?

6 **Read and write the correct form:**
1- really 2- skipping

7 **Punctuate the sentences:**
Does Heba and Aya prefer playing with old toys or new toys?

8 **Write an email:**
From: adel@gmail.com
To: tom@yahoo.com
Subject: My family, school and hobbies
Hi Tom!
I hope you're doing well. I will tell you about myself. I have two sisters. My family consists of five people. My dad is a teacher, and my mom is a housekeeper. My sisters are two and five years old. I go to Abo Bakr School in Cairo. My hobbies are playing football and reading. Tell me about yourself. Talk to you soon,
Adel

Unit (9)



Lesson 1

1 **Read and complete the text:**
1- review 2- setting 3- characters 4- ending





2 Read and complete the text:
1- rides 2- donkey 3- turn 4- tired

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- characters 2- moral 3- narrator
4- ending 5- Characters 6- ending
7- setting 8- moral 9- narrator
10- setting 11- characters 12- moral

4 Read and write the correct form:
1- carry 2- carved 3- reading
4- writing 5- is 6- is

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- He's a great narrator.
2- They both carry the donkey!
3- Why is reading an important activity?
4- His stories are both funny and clever.

6 Write a paragraph:
"My favorite story"
My favorite story is one of Goha's stories. It's the one that talks about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending of the story, they both carry the donkey! The moral of the story is that you can't make everyone happy.

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- beach 2- surfed 3- swimming
4- message

2 Read and complete the text:
1- playing 2- was 3- hoping 4- were

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- were 2- was 3- were 4- was
5- were 6- were 7- was 8- when
9- swimming 10- sent 11- walking
12- came 13- happening 14- shining
15- hoping 16- when 17- wasn't
18- were writing 19- was playing
20- was doing

4 Complete the sentences:
1- was doing / got 2- were playing / arrived
3- wasn't watching / called
4- Were / looking / saw

5 Read and write the correct form:
1- swimming 2- was working 3- found
4- when 4- happening 5- watching

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- What was happening yesterday?
2- Tom's grandparents lived by the sea.
3- I wasn't watching TV when you called me.

7 Make up a story:
Yesterday, I was on the beach near my house. It was morning, and it was sunny. I was walking with my friend when we discovered a mysterious bottle buried in the sand. Excitedly, we opened it, and a tiny, talking seashell went out! It told us about a hidden treasure on a nearby island. We couldn't believe our luck and decided to go on an unforgettable adventure to find the treasure.

Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text:
1- shepherd 2- sheep 3- bored 4- wolf

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- untrue 2- shepherd 3- wolf
4- Villagers 5- sheep 6- joke
7- incorrect 8- whisper 9- truth

4 Read the text and answer:
1- sheep 2- excited 3- shepherd
4- He was very scared and climbed a tree. He called and called for someone to help him but no one arrived.
5- No. Because he lied to the people before, no one arrived to help him this time, and the wolf killed and ate the sheep.

5 Read and write the correct form:
1- resend 2- dislike 3- unhappy
4- incorrect 4- disagree 5- untidy 6- replay

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- I like playing indoors.
2- Who is the main character in the story?
3- Why do you dislike surfing?
4- The villagers came to help and save the sheep.



Answer Key

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Why did the main character annoy the villagers?
2- Once there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village.
3- Why does Nancy dislike surfing?

Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text:
1- coast 2- sailing 3- message 4- reading

2 Read and complete the text:
1- bottle 2- reply 3- message 4- excited

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- sailing 2- reply 3- excited 4- grew 5- reply

4 Read the text and answer:
1- bottle 2- coast 3- sailing
4- He is from France.
5- It traveled over 6,000 kilometers.

5 Read and write the correct form:
1- writing 2- reading 3- sailing
4- sailing 5- find

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- I enjoyed reading about your favorite things.
2- You are going to write a short story.
3- How did they find the message?
4- We have a reply to our message in a bottle!

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1- What did Granddad think of Tom's idea?
2- Tom went to his grandparents' house.
3- A man in France found the message.
4- How does Tom feel?

8 Write an email:
From: dina@school.net
To: amira@gmail.com
Subject: The place I would like to visit
Hi Amira!
I hope you're doing well. You asked me about the place I wanted to visit. I would like to visit Morocco. I love Moroccan people so much. I want to visit the beautiful nature there. I read that Morocco has a lot of amazing places to visit. Tell me about the place you would like to visit.
Talk to you soon,
Dina

Unit (9) Test (5)
خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- stories 2- market 3- setting
4- characters 5- ending

2 Read and circle the odd one out:
1- boy → dog 2- left → played
3- hill → teacher 4- bottle → shore
5- understand → untrue

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- setting 2- characters 3- surf 4- wolves
5- Jokes 6- doing 7- when
8- wasn't 9- swimming 10- found

4 Read the passage and answer:
1- They were playing in the forest.
2- It was a lovely afternoon, and the sun was shining.
3- He invited them to have some fresh juice. 4- afternoon 5- shepherd

5 Reorder the words:
1- Why do you dislike surfing?
2- They both carry the donkey!
3- What did the wolf eat at the end?
4- Tom was writing his message.
5- Who is the main character in the story?

6 Write an email:
From: yasmeen@hotmail.com
To: hend@yahoo.com
Subject: An interesting story I read
Hi Hend!
I hope you're doing well. I read an interesting story at the library, and I want to share it with you. The story was about a boy who worked as a shepherd. He wasn't telling the truth to the villagers, and he lied to them. As a result of his lies, the wolf ate his sheep. I learned that I mustn't lie and I must tell the truth.
See you soon,
Yasmeen

Unit (9) Test (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- France 2- sailing 3- green 4- bottle

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- moral 2- whisper 3- reply 4- narrator

3 Read and complete the text:
1- First 2- piece 3- fold 4- Finally

4 Read the text and answer:
1- Goha's new clothes 2- clever 3- dinner
4- Because Goha took off his coat and put it in the food and said, "Eat, coat!".
5- He gave him a good seat and offered him the best dishes.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- The villagers came to help and save the sheep.
2- Why is reading an important activity?
3- They both carry the donkey!

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- were playing 2- reading

7 Punctuate the sentences:
- Ayman was riding a bike when he met his friend Magdy.

8 Write a paragraph:
"What you were doing yesterday afternoon"
Hello! I'm Mazen. Yesterday afternoon, I was meeting my friends. We were going to the park. After that, we were riding bikes. We were playing football, and I scored a lot of goals. My friend Adham played a wonderful game, too. He was a defender, and he played a very nice match. After this amazing day, we walked together to our homes. I love my friends so much.

Review (3)

Test (7) on Units (7-8-9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- iron 2- meteorites 3- craftsmen 4- precious

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- character 2- beat 3- durable 4- shepherd

3 Read and complete the text:
1- making up 2- toys 3- figures 4- outside

4 Read the text and answer:
1- museum 2- animal 3- statues
4- They saw different statues in gold and silver.
5- They believed that cats kept them safe.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- The villagers were very angry.
2- I really missed the countryside.
3- How do you play this game?

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- dislike 2- wish

7 Punctuate the sentences:
- Mona enjoys playing marbles on Sundays.

8 Write a paragraph:
"My favorite pet"
My favorite pet is a dog. It is my dog, Roy. I love it because it is very cute and loyal. He is like a friend to me. I feed it three times a day. It eats dry food. I love playing with it. Dogs are amazing pets. They learn very quickly. My dog Roy sleeps in a small house.



Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:
1- proverb 2- meaning 3- catch
4- successful

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- proverb 2- sensible 3- successful
4- careful 5- similar 6- real
7- proverb 8- Similar 9- hatch
10- successful 11- nests

3 Read and write the correct form:
1- mean 2- think 3- have
4- doing 4- understand

4 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Did you understand the meanings?
2- Similar people like doing the same things.
3- What does this proverb mean?
4- A careful person tries hard not to make mistakes.

5 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Injy, what does this proverb mean?
2- Singing birds don't build nests.
3- Who suggests meanings for the proverbs: Malak or Injy?

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- historical 2- snorkeling 3- safari 4- sail



2 Read and complete the text:
1- species 2- vacations 3- migrating 4- protect

3 Read and complete the text:
1- underwater 2- tour 3- coral 4- protected

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- respect 2- Sustainable 3- Simple
4- Accommodation 5- ideal 6- historical
7- reef 8- Eco-tourism 9- protect
10- snorkeling 11- accommodation
12- camp 13- respect 14- close
15- migrate 16- species

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- must 2- mustn't 3- must 4- fly
5- bring 6- mustn't 7- must 8- get
9- mustn't 10- be 11- mustn't 12- study

6 Read the text and answer:
1- cause 2- sustainable 3- protect
4- Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment.
5- To find food, make nests, or have warmer weather.

7 Read and write the correct form:
1- mustn't 2- must 3- get 4- fly
5- mustn't 6- bring 7- be 8- must

8 Put the words in the correct order:
1- They mustn't get too close to the birds.
2- Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place.
3- You mustn't leave trash in the desert.
4- You must be careful in the natural environment.
5- Eco-tourism doesn't damage the environment. 6- People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea.

9 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Egypt is an amazing country.
2- Which activities would you like to do?
3- People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea. 4- What is eco-tourism?
5- Many people are starting to visit Egypt for wildlife and bird-watching.
6- Which vacation would you like to go on?

10 Write a paragraph:
"What you are going to see and do on your next vacation"
On my next vacation, I'm super excited about going on a snorkel safari! I can't wait to see all the colorful fish and coral under the sea. I also heard that the desert sunsets are amazing, so I want to watch them too. Another cool thing is going on a boat ride on the river and watching birds. I'm also looking forward to visiting historical places. It's going to be so fun exploring new places and doing new activities!

Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text:
1- protect 2- damage 3- eco-friendly
4- eco-tourism

2 Read and complete the text:
1- eco-tourist 2- recycle 3- environment
4- eco-tourism

3 Read and complete the text:
1- hotter 2- leave 3- migrate 4- falcons

4 Read and complete the text:
1- journey 2- get 3- sun 4- find

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- will 2- go 3- learn 4- won't 5- eat
6- doesn't leave 7- will 8- create 9- has
10- won't 11- be 12- feels

6 Read the text and answer:
1- fish 2- hotter 3- big
4- Birds such as eagles, falcons, swifts, pelicans and flamingos.
5- Because of where it is in the world.

7 Complete the sentences:
1- have / will study 2- go / won't get up
3- plays / will be 4- feels / will drink
5- don't work / will miss

8 Read and write the correct form:
1- stay 2- is 3- will eat
4- catch 5- learn 6- will cause

9 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Migrating birds fly very long distances.
2- Tourism is important in Egypt.
3- Many birds migrate to and from Egypt.
4- Why is eco-tourism a good idea?
5- Many birds migrate to find hot weather.

10 Write an email:
From: maher@yahoo.com
To: waleed@gmail.com

Subject: A science lesson I have learned
Hi Waleed!
I hope you're doing well. I have learned a new science lesson at school, and I want to share it with you. Do you know that many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world? North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.
See you soon,
Maher

Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text:
1- habitats 2- food 3- planet 4- hurt

2 Read and complete the text:
1- locals 2- dive 3- reefs 4- wildlife

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- help 2- food 3- watching 4- are lots of
5- habitat 6- reefs 7- habitats
8- recycle 9- dive 10- habitats

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- so 2- because 3- but 4- and
5- so 6- because 7- and 8- and
9- so 10- and 11- and 12- and

5 Complete these sentences:
1- so 2- because 3- but 4- and

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- so 2- because 3- and 4- so 5- because
6- so 7- because 8- so 9- so 10- because
11- so 12- because 13- because 14- but

7 Put the words in the correct order:
1- There are lots of different habitats in Egypt.
2- You can see coral reefs and lots of fish.
3- What is bad for animals?
4- We wanted to clean up the beach.
5- People can go on wildlife-watching vacations.

8 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Who knows Ras Mohammed National Park?
2- In Egypt, there are many types of habitat. 3- What is a habitat?

Unit (10) Test (8)
خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- successful 2- similar 3- careful
4- plans 5- real

2 Read and circle the odd one out:
1- help → helpful 2- pollution → play
3- damage → view
4- sail → eagle 5- similar → hatch

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- sail 2- flocks 3- respect 4- coral
5- sustainable 6- want 7- stay
8- fly 9- mustn't 10- but

4 Read the passage and answer:
1- Wildlife watching is ideal for people who respect nature.
2- Because they might fly away.
3- There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt. 4- bird-watching 5- Oasis

5 Reorder the words:
1- Animals need safe places to find food.
2- Egypt is an amazing country.
3- What is bad for animals?4- Many people visit Egypt for wildlife and bird-watching.
5- Eagles migrate to other continents.

6 Write a paragraph:
"An eco-tourism vacation"
I went on an eco-tourism vacation, and it was so much fun! We learned to respect nature while traveling. We saw amazing animals, like colorful birds and cute monkeys. We went hiking in the beautiful forests and climbed up high mountains. I loved taking photos of the pretty flowers and the breathtaking views. It was the best vacation ever because we got to have fun and also take care of our planet!

Unit (10) Test (9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- desert 2- wildlife 3- tent 4- sand

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- protect 2- guidebook 3- migrate
4- habitats

3 Read and complete the text:
1- Eco-tourism 2- sustainable
3- accommodation 4- pollution





4 Read the text and answer:
1- warmer 2- of all nationalities 3- winter
4- They enjoy our fine weather, sunshine and nature. 5- Tourists from the Arab and African countries.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Proverbs have more than one meaning.
2- Where can you see these birds?
3- Eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- must 2- learn

7 Punctuate the sentences:
- This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life.

8 Write an email:
From: mariam@hotmail.com
To: esraa@school.net
Subject: The benefits of eco-tourism
Hi Esraa!
I hope you're doing well. I read an interesting report about the benefits of eco-tourism. I will share some information with you. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.
See you soon,
Mariam

Unit (11)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:
1- support 2- community 3- volunteered
4- participating

2 Read and complete the text:
1- after-school 2- skills 3- nervous 4- joined

3 Read and complete the text:
1- kind 2- after 3- shopping 4- stores

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- support 2- participate 3- volunteer
4- donate 5- participate 6- after 7- up
8- out 9- volunteer 10- support 11- kind
12- donated 13- to 14- volunteered

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- We will start up a local children's charity.
2- What did some people want to grow?
3- Our neighbor has always been kind to us.
4- How often does Tamer volunteer?
5- I painted lots of big pictures.

6 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Who did Tamer want to help?
2- I teach the class after school on Wednesdays.
3- We train and play games on Fridays.

7 Write an email:
From: farida@hotmail.com
To: basma@gmail.com
Subject: Volunteering in our community
Hi Basma!
I hope you're doing well. I wanted to tell you about the cool things we've been doing in our community to make it cleaner and more beautiful. Me and some volunteers have been picking up trash from the streets and planting flowers in the park. It's so much fun! We also started a community garden where we grow our own vegetables. It's amazing to see how we can produce our own food. Let's participate and make our neighborhood even better!
Talk to you soon,
Farida

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- installed 2- cameras 3- film 4- record

2 Read and complete the text:
1- gloves 2- grabber 3- stick 4- handle

3 Read and complete the text:
1- center 2- multi-grip 3- top 4- day

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- controller 2- joysticks 3- game 4- home
5- film 6- grabber 7- multi-grip 8- nature camera 9- gloves 10- joystick 11- button
12- menu 13- collect 14- stick 15- drop

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- to 2- visit 3- collect 4- she's learning
5- Why 6- pick 7- because 8- film
9- play 10- tell





6 Read and write the correct form:
1- send 2- to 3- protect 4- to 5- learn
6- To protect 7- to arrive 8- to

7 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Lama painted a picture to put in the exhibition. 2- They make lemonade to sell in the market.
3- Farah traveled by bus to see her cousins. 4- We bought some candy to eat during the movie.
5- Do you want to play a game with me?
6- We're doing a wildlife project.
7- Why do the old people use a multi-grip?

8 Punctuate the sentences:
1- What are these parts for?
2- I went to the sports center on Monday.
3- The teacher told Hamza and his friends to do a project.
4- Is this your new games console, Amira?

9 Write an email:
From: arwa@gmail.com
To: Aya@yahoo.com
Subject: The games I have at home
Hi Aya!
I hope you're having a great day. I wanted to tell you about the fun games we have at home. I have a lot of video games. I have a controller. It's what I use to play the game. And there is the home button. When I press it, it takes me back to the menu. There are the action buttons. I use them to tell my character to run, jump, or do other actions. And there are the joysticks. They help me move your character around. I love my video games so much.
Talk to you soon,
Arwa

Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text:
1- socialize 2- confidence
3- Fundraising 4- give

2 Read and complete the text:
1- participated 2- volunteers
3- activities 4- fundraising

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- socialize 2- confidence 3- Fundraising
4- reward 5- rich 6- jealous 7- sparrow

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- slow 2- well 3- well 4- gently
5- happily 6- fast 7- quick 8- happily
9- happy 10- quiet 11- quietly 12- angrily
13- badly 14- fast 15- quietly 16- well

5 Read and write the correct form:
1- quietly 2- well 3- patiently 4- beautifully
5- happily 6- angrily 7- quickly
8- patient 9- quietly 10- slow

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- My advice to teenagers is to volunteer.
2- I want to give you a reward.
3- Volunteering gives you confidence.
4- The older brother planted the seed.
5- What is Rawan's advice for teenagers?

7 Write a paragraph:
"Things I learn from volunteering"
You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you live.

Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text:
1- participated 2- event 3- charity 4-community

2 Read and complete the text:
1- project 2- successful 3- award 4- charity

3 Read and complete the text:
1- charity 2- Volunteering 3- neighbors
4- shopping

4 Read the text and answer:
1- beach 2- leader 3- few
4- She helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping.
5- She studied social sciences.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. 2- What could you do to help the environment?
3- You can offer to do their shopping.
4- Tarek saw his friend dropping litter.



6 Write a biography:
------- يجيب عنه الطالب -------

Unit (11) Test (10)
خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- controller 2- button 3- menu
4- action 5- jump

2 Read and circle the odd one out:
1- volunteering → volunteer
2- day center → handle
3- leaflet → gift 4- control → computer
5- information → player

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- installed 2- donate 3- controller
4- participate 5- jealous 6- to 7- visit
8- quickly 9- make 10- angrily

4 Read the passage and answer:
1- She was in the hospital.
2- No, she wasn't.
3- He and his friends painted lots of big pictures. 4- sick 5- donated

5 Reorder the words:
1- Nada loves to participate in volunteer events. 2- Lama painted a picture to put in the exhibition.
3- What does the Food Box charity do?
4- She ran very quickly to school.
5- How did Fareeda help her neighbors?

6 Write an email:
From: ashraf@yahoo.com
To: maged@school.net
Subject: The next summer holiday
Hi Maged!
I hope you're doing well. I hope you can visit me in the next summer holiday. We can do some voluntary activities. We can volunteer to help old people in the community. We can help children through charities. We can also volunteer to clean up the streets and beaches. We will have so much fun.
See you soon,
Ashraf

Unit (11) Test (11)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- Alexandria 2- six 3- Worker 4- children

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- participate 2- grabber 3- Fundraising
4- reduce

3 Read and complete the text:
1- diet 2- citizens 3- volunteering
4- writing

4 Read the text and answer:
1- volunteering 2- confidence 3- friends
4- When you volunteer, you learn life skills while having fun and helping others.
5- It means you believe in yourself.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- He went to his brother's house.
2- Why does she like helping children?
3- We wear gloves to protect our hands.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- quickly 2- to

7 Punctuate the sentences:
- Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria.

8 Write a paragraph:
"My dad's biography"
My dad was born in Alexandria in 1960. He studied at primary, preparatory and secondary schools in the city. After he finished these schools, he studied in the faculty of commerce at Alexandria University. Now, he works as a professor at the university. I am so proud of my dad.

Review (4)

Test (12) on Units (10-11)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- country 2- snorkeling 3- desert
4- Eco-tourism

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- respect 2- migrate 3- kind 4- reward

3 Read and complete the text:
1- help out 2- reading 3- starting up
4- forward

4 Read the text and answer:
1- Egyptian 2- Femto Second 3- 1999
4- His work helps scientists to produce new and useful medicines for curing diseases. 5- In Egypt.





5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Birds of a feather flock together.
2- Many birds migrate to and from Egypt.
3- I love reading short stories.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- mustn't 2- well

7 Punctuate the sentences:
I love reading.

8 Write a paragraph:
"Reading"
My favorite hobby is reading. I read in the school library and when I return home. I practice it a lot whenever I have free time. I think it's an interesting hobby. I always advise my friends to practice it. Reading makes our minds think better and makes us special.



Revision on Unit 7

1 Read and complete the text:
1- pets 2- adored 3- pests 4- grain

2 Read and complete the text:
1- king 2- gold 3- wish 4- daughter

3 Read and complete the text:
1- climate 2- dry 3- preserve 4- durable

4 Read and complete the text:
1- adored 2- after 3- pets 4- keep

5 Read and complete the text:
1- traded 2- rocks 3- heated 4- harder

6 Read and complete the text:
1- tripped 2- castle 3- warm 4- asked

7 Put the words in the correct order:
1- We have a hot, dry climate in Egypt.
2- It is the world's oldest intact ship.
3- What would you like to know?
4- We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.
5- Why do we have so many artifacts?
6- He was at the museum on Friday.
7- Which was their favorite animal?
8- The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them.
9- What did they feed their cats?
10- The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets.
11- What other animals did the Ancient Egyptians keep?
12- They heated the rocks and took out the metal parts.
13- Gold is a popular metal for making jewelry.
14- Ancient Egypt was one of the strongest economies in the world.
15- King Midas was a kind man.

8 Punctuate the following sentences:
1- King Midas was a kind man.
2 King Midas's tears fell on his precious roses. 3 What is Luxor famous for?
4 Ahmed didn't go to school on Monday.
5 My family and I went to Aswan on vacation. 6 What was the ancient Egyptians' favorite animal?
7 The ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. 8 The Khufu solar ship is an artifact from ancient Egypt.
9 My dad went on a business trip to Tokyo.
10. I like Chinese food so much.

9 Choose the correct answer:
1- fascinating 2- preserving 3- adores 4- Grain 5- Wisdom 6- mummify 7- Trade 8- Metal 9- weapon 10- Economy 11- artifact 12- Granite 13- clay 14- climate 15- valuable 16- guide 17- durable 18- statue 19- economy

10 Read and write the correct form:
1- knew 2- liked 3- was 4- were 5- loved 6- believed 7- Did 8- were 9- Were 10- didn't eat 11- was 12- was 13- made 14- lived 15- did 16- wore 17- front 18- next 19- of 20- in 21- between 22- on 23- to 24- in

11 Choose the correct answer:
1- was 2- loved 3- was 4- kept
5- produced 6- didn't 7- did 8- are
9- Did 10- went 11- eat 12- didn't

12 Choose the correct answer:
1- Where 2- behind 3- between 4- on
5- in front 6- in 7- next 8- under 9- in 10- to

Unit 7 Revision Test 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- metal 2- rocks 3- heated 4- harder

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- granite 2- adores 3- trades 4- rare

3 Read and complete the text:
1- iron 2- craftsmen 3- tomb 4- mined

4 Read the text and answer:
1- mountains 2- black 3- Earth
4- The moon is a very silent world because sounds can only travel through air.
5- It looks like a big ball, colored blue, green and brown.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- I like walking in the fresh air.
2- Did you have a nice weekend?
3- This is a scarab amulet from Ancient Egypt.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- taught 2- next

7 Punctuate the sentences:
They made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb.

8 Write an email:
From: mona@school.net
To: rasha@hotmail.com
Subject: What I and my family did yesterday
Hi Rasha,
How are you, Rasha. Guess what! I did a lot of things yesterday. I went to Al-Azhar Park with my family. We went by car. We had a picnic. Then we went on a boat ride. It was great! We wanted to go hiking, but it started to rain. We had a very nice day.
See you soon,
Mona

Revision on Unit 8

1 Read and complete the text:
1- skateboard 2- friends 3- helmet 4- hurts

2 Read and complete the text:
1- imagination 2- doll's 3- action 4- running

3 Read and complete the text:
1- bricks 2- creative 3- adventure 4- solve

4 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Playing is good for us in lots of different ways. 2- Did you visit your grandma on the weekend? 3- I found a box of my old toys.
4- I loved playing with my old action figures.
5- Have you started your project yet?
6- What games did you like playing?
7- Ahmed thought hide and seek was fun.
8- He didn't like skipping at all!
9- I had to wear a helmet and knee pads.
10 Nour really enjoyed playing outside when she was younger. 11- Ali's parents were shopping at the market.
12- An old man was sitting behind the stall.
13- We loved playing with our train set.
14- Mustafa loves playing kinds of all games. 15- Some of the images in modern video games are amazing.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:
1 .Did you visit grandma on last Monday?
2 .Adam didn't play board games very often. 3 .Did Fares love playing with his old action figures?
4 .We went on a vacation to Alexandria last summer. 5 .My friend Hesham loved playing with his train set.
6 .My cousin Hasan had a skateboard when he was younger. 7 .When Amina was little, she really liked board games.
8 .What was Youssef's favorite toy?
9 .Ghada prefers playing board games to skipping. 10. Did your dad travel to Europe last January?

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- How often 2- stall 3- beat 4- have
5- made 6- set 7- skateboard
8- cuddly 9- go 10- action 12- board
13- doll's 15- cuddly 16- trunk 17- sail
18- button 19- drought 20- skateboard 21- beat 22- rollerblades 23- figures

7 Read and write the correct form:
1- visit 2- was 3- were 4- very / really
5- at all 6- very / really 7- very / really
8- studying 9- really 10- watching 11- being
12- reading 13- making 14- playing 15- telling

8 Choose the correct answer:
1- Did 2- was 3- have 4- were 5- really
6- very 7- so 8- at all 9- at all 10- quite



11- reading 12- playing 13- spending
14- going 15- playing 16- running 17- going
18- playing 19- being 20- showing

Unit 8 Revision Test 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- toys 2- hiding 3- chalk 4- preferred

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- button 2- How often 3- console 4- seek

3 Read and complete the text:
1- games 2- beat 3- marbles 4- cuddly

4 Read the text and answer:
1- hobby 2- older 3- near
4- He is a businessman. 5- The best thing about the holiday was people.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Did you have a go on them? 2- He got his first skateboard when he was eight.
3- Some skipping games are so difficult.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- drinking 2- very / really

7 Punctuate the sentences:
- My brother and I play video games on Fridays.

8 Write a paragraph:
"Hopscotch"
When I was younger, my favorite game was hopscotch. Hopscotch is an old game. Many children like playing it. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. I really liked playing hopscotch with my friends. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares. I thought hopscotch was quite good.



Revision on Unit 9

1 Read and complete the text:
1- coast 2- boat 3- message 4- color

2 Read and complete the text:
1- countryside 2- turns 3- let 4- ending

3 Read and complete the text:
1- by 2- surfed 3- bottle 4- message

4 Read and complete the text:
1- lying 2- lonely 3- down 4- truth

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. 2- The setting is the countryside, many years ago.
3- They took turns riding the donkey.
4- He should let his son have a turn.
5- The ending of the story is very exciting.
6- His stories are both funny and clever.
7- His stories are popular all over the world. 8- Are the stories in every country the same?
9- Tom's grandparents lived by the sea.
10- The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful.
11- Let's write a message in a bottle.
12- What's a message in a bottle?
13- My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz.
14- What were you doing yesterday?
15- I was walking to the park.
16- Peter worked alone as a shepherd.
17- He took the sheep up the hill.

6 Punctuate the sentences:
1- I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories.
2- Adam's grandparents lived by the sea.
3- Did Ayman work as a shepherd?
4- Was Osama scared when he saw a wolf?
5- My name is Hugo and I live in France.
6- You should come and visit me in Alexandria.
7- The Pyramids of Giza are one of the most famous tourist attractions.
8- Have you ever visited Luxor?
9- How far is it from Cairo to Sharm El-Sheikh?
10- The River Nile is the longest river in Africa.
11- Where is the Egyptian Museum located?
12- Aswan is known for its beautiful sunsets and the High Dam.

7 Choose the correct answer:
1- surf 2- Jokes 3- character 4- moral
5- ending 6- characters 7- setting
8- narrator 9- shepherd 10- lying
11- hill 12- village 13- scared 14- sailing
15- reply 16- hill 17- incorrect
18- whisper 19- truth

8 Read and write the correct form:
1- playing 2- were 3- arrived 4- were
5- having 6- Was 7- went 8- cooking
9- were 10- received 11- Was 12- were
13- laughing 14- was 15- writing

9 Choose the correct answer:
1- were 2- playing 3- watching 4- was
5- came 6- were playing 7- fell 8- was
9- were 10- saw 11- coming 12- was
13- weren't 14- was swimming 15- sent

Unit 9 Revision Test 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- France 2- sailing 3- kilometers 4- green

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- ending 2- reply 3- shepherd 4- moral

3 Read and complete the text:
1- forest 2- shining 3- path 4- scared

4 Read the text and answer:
1- 60 days 2- island 3- stories
4- Because of a terrible storm.
5- A ship came near them and took them home again.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Peter was very scared and climbed a tree. 2- Do you want to read the message?
3- I was sailing in the water when I saw something.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- met 2- was watching

7 Punctuate the sentences:
Was Hosam playing tennis on Friday at 2 pm?

8 Write an email:
From: amal@yahoo.com
To: hala@gmail.com
Subject: A story I read
Hi Hala,
I hope you're doing well. I want to tell you about a story I read and liked so much. It was about a man called Goha. He was going to the market with his son and his donkey. When his son rode the donkey, the people said that he was impolite. When Goha rode the donkey, the people said that he was cruel. When they walked after the donkey, the people said they were crazy. Also, when they carried the donkey, the people said they were crazy. At the end, Goha said to his son that no one can win the approval of all people. And that's the moral I learned from the story.
See you soon,
Amal

Revision on Unit 10

1 Read and complete the text:
1- hatch 2- nest 3- careful 4- real

2 Read and complete the text:
1- species 2- vacations 3- migrating
4- habitat

3 Read and complete the text:
1- bird-watching 2- distance 3- ideal
4- respect

4 Read and complete the text:
1- habitats 2- close 3- wildlife 4- damage

5 Read and complete the text:
1- river 2- camp 3- lizards 4- mustn't

6 Read and complete the text:
1- protect 2- take 3- cause 4- create

7 Read and complete the text:
1- bird-watching 2- migrate 3- nests
4- journeys

8 Read and complete the text:
1- proverb 2- means 3- feathers 4- similar

9 Put the words in the correct order:
1- You might have four eggs in a nest.
2- If something is real, it is true and happens. 3- Wildlife watching is ideal for people who respect nature.
4- Many people visit Egypt for wildlife and bird-watching.
5- Eco-tourism is becoming very popular.
6- Egypt is an amazing country.
7- North Africa is hotter than Europe.
8- Lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt. 9- The Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit.
10- Animals need safe places to find food.
11- A habitat is a place where an animal or plant lives.

10 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Even an eagle will not fly higher than the sun.
2- The early bird catches the worm.
3- Birds of a feather flock together.
4- The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly.
5- Many kinds of birds migrate to Egypt.
6- Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.
7- There are lots of things we can do in Aswan.
8- We mustn't waste water or drop litter.
9- In Egypt, there are many types of habitats.
10- The Red Sea is an amazing area to visit.

11 Choose the correct answer:
1- proverb 2- respect 3- accommodation 4- ideal 5- successful 6- sensible 7- reef 8- careful 9- similar 10- nest 11- reef 12- guidebook 13- sustainable 14- country 15- safari 16- watching 17- migrate 18- migrating 19- protect 20- taking 21- Peninsula 22- Park

12 Read and write the correct form:
1- mustn't 2- must 3- fly 4- bring 5- mustn't 6- must 7- has 8- won't get up 9- will be 10- doesn't feel 11- don't work 12- so 13- but 14- because 15- so 16- and

13 Choose the correct answer:
1- must 2- mustn't 3- mustn't 4- must 5- must 6- mustn't 7- must 8- mustn't 9- must 10- must

14 Choose the correct answer:
1- have 2- miss 3- rains 4- get 5- won't 6- will 7- don't 8- improve 9- is 10- will

15 Choose the correct answer:
1- so 2- but 3- because 4- so 5- but 6- because 7- so 8- but

Unit 10 Revision Test 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- habitats 2- protect 3- waste 4- down

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- recycle 2- coral 3- Accommodation 4- sustainable

3 Read and complete the text:
1- bird-watching 2- migrate 3- weather 4- journeys

4 Read the text and answer:
1- a bird 2- safe 3- tusks
4- They mainly eat grass.
5- It makes fine leather that's made into beautiful belts, shoes and bags.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- A habitat is a place where an animal or plant lives. 2- People come here to snorkel and scuba dive.
3- Eco-tourism is becoming very popular.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- but 2- will eat

7 Punctuate the sentences:
My friend Yaser and I play video games on Thursday.

8 Write a paragraph:
Animal habitats, like deserts, forests, mountains, and seas, are really important for animals to live in. We can help protect these habitats so that animals can be safe and happy. In deserts, we can make sure not to drop litter and keep the area clean. In forests, we should be careful not to start fires and to protect the trees. Mountains are home to many animals, so we should avoid throwing trash and respect their space. And in the sea, we need to keep the water clean by not polluting it with garbage. If we all work together, we can make a big difference in protecting animal habitats and keeping our animal friends safe.

Revision on Unit 11

1 Read and complete the text:
1- volunteer 2- environment 3- recycle 4- citizens

2 Read and complete the text:
1- skills 2- socialize 3- confidence 4- Volunteering

3 Read and complete the text:
1- support 2- garden 3- volunteered 4- habitats

5 Read and complete the text:
1- socialize 2- confidence 3- Fundraising
4- give back

5 Read and complete the text:
1- controller 2- button 3- action 4- joysticks

6 Read and complete the text:
1- hospital 2- sick 3- painted 4- donated

7 Put the words in the correct order:
1- He found a bird with a broken wing.
2- Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria.
3- Dalia came first in the running race.
4- Fundraising helps charities get the money they need.
5- Why does Rawan like helping children?
6- Is this your new games console?
7- Why do the old people use a multi-grip?
8- Nesma wears sunglasses to protect her eyes. 9- Rahma listens to music to help her relax.
10- Do you want to play a game with me?
11- She quickly learned the rules.
12- Reducing waste helps the environment. 13- They make lemonade to sell in the market.
14- Helping children makes me happy.
15- My sister speaks English well.

8 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Mom is using an app to learn French.
2- Adel went to Cairo to see his friends.
3- Is this your new games console, Amira?
4- Why does Rawan like helping children?
5- When did Fareeda first start volunteering?
6- Mr Ibrahim waited patiently for the train to arrive.
7- Maged's picture of a horse is excellent.
8- Dalida volunteered happily at the children's day center.
9- Charlie ate chicken, cheese and chips.
10- Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria.

9 Choose the correct answer:
1- Fundraising 2- multi-grip 3- home
4- game 5- support 6- participate
7- button 8- up 9- out 10- volunteer
11- nature camera 12- protect
13- socialize 14- grabber 15- sparrow
16- reward 17- recycle 18- controller
19- after 20- volunteer 21- donate

10 Read and write the correct form:
1- to 2- help 3- on 4- to 5- film
6- quickly 7- angrily 8- quietly 9- take
10- careful 11- kind 12- patiently
13- beautifully 14- to 15- study

11 Choose the correct answer:
1- quickly 2- angrily 3- well 4- protect
5- learn 6- to visit 7- to help 8- fast
9- badly 10- quietly 11- well 12- see
13- to eat 14- to 15- because

Unit 11 Revision Test 5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- help 2- interesting 3- sick 4- shopping

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- nature camera 2- button 3- recycle
4- collect

3 Read and complete the text:
1- project 2- installed 3- film 4- record

4 Read the text and answer:
1- quiet 2- happy 3- similar
4- They lived in small houses.
5- No, there wasn't.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- I want to give you a reward.
2- Youssef is fantastic at football.
3- What did some people want to grow?

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- quickly 2- send

7 Punctuate the sentences:
- I went to the sports center on Monday.

8 Write an email:
From: tamara@yahoo.com
To: sama@gmail.com
Subject: The party I went to
Hi Sama,
How are you? I went to an amazing party last night. It was my friend Hala's birthday party. We celebrated and played games. Her mom made a lot of food for us. I ate cake and other delicious food. I met my friend Aya there. It was a wonderful party.
See you soon,
Tamara







Revision Test (1)
خاص بالازهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- museum 2- friends 3- artifacts
4- made 4- gold

2 Read and circle the odd one out:
1. material → different
2. happen → story
3. passed → wrote
4. village → goal 5. journey → school

3 Choose the correct answer:
1. nests 2. historical 3. guidebook
4. participate 5. button 6. quietly 7. eat
8. in 9. at all 10. making

4 Read the passage and answer:
1. He likes playing games.
2. His favorite games are video games.
3. He plays for about an hour on the weekend. 4. builds 5. bricks

5 Reorder the words:
1- What are you good at?
2- My grandparents lived by the sea.
3- How often do you go to the club?
4- Ali enjoyed shopping at the market.
5- I think hopscotch is good.

6 Write a paragraph:
"My vacation last year"
I went to Hurghada last year. I went with My family. It was a great vacation. We Liked snorkeling in the Red Sea. we made A snorkel safari. We took our camera and Did some underwater photography. We Sailed out to places where we saw many Different kinds of fish. There were beautiful, bright colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. We enjoyed our time there. We were very happy.

Revision Test (2)
خاص بالازهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialogue:
1. born 2. elder 3. volunteer
4. clean -up 5. award

2 Read and circle the odd one out:
1. hard → melt 2. statue → crocodile
3. castle → granite 4. beat → cuddly toy
5. journalist → sister

3 Choose the correct answer:
1. sailing 2. narrator 3. successful
4. recycle 5. migrate 6. visit 7. must
8. next 9. were 10. swimming

4 Read the passage and answer:
1. He is doing research on how to be a good citizen. 2. We should be polite and kind to our neighbors. We should help people who are old and sick.
3. We can protect the environment by reducing waste. 4. recycle 5. interesting

5 Reorder the words:
1. Younis hates playing tennis.
2. What is Rawan's advice for teenagers?
3. What is bad for animals?
4. Singing birds don't build nests.
5. Why do you dislike surfing?

6 Write a paragraph:
From: Amir@yahoo.com
To: Tarek@gmail.com
Subject: My favorite toy
Hi, Tarek. How are you? I'm writing to tell you about my favorite toy when I was younger. My favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one. What about your favorite toy?
Looking forward to hearing from you.
Best wishes,
Amir

Revision Test (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- donate 2- charities 3- events 4- kind

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- go 2- hatch 3- respect 4- grabber

3 Read and complete the text:
1- trade 2- silver 3- jewelry 4- durable

4 Read the text and answer:
1- traded 2- form 3- rarer
4- They first found metal in rocks.
5- They used metal for making tools and weapons.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- I want to give you a reward.
2- Why is eco-tourism a good idea?
3- You are going to write a short story.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- playing 2- resend

7 Punctuate the sentences:
People go bird-watching in Egypt.

8 Write an email:
From: seif@yahoo.com
To: khaled@gmail.com
Subject: my final revision tests
Hi Khaled,
How are you, Khaled . I have tests next week and I try to get ready for them. I revise my lessons to do my tests. I sometimes go to my friend Omar's house to study there. We want you to come to study with us. We should do our best. We always have a nice time.
See you soon,
Seif

Revision Test (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- Alexandria 2- six 3- Worker 4- children

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- console 2- protect 3- kind 4- Craftsmen

3 Read and complete the text:
1- Ancient 2- Gold 3- rarer 4 economy

4 Read the text and answer:
1- fish 2- hotter 3- Egypt
4- Eagles, falcons, and swifts.
5- To find warm weather and food.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Nada loves to participate in volunteer events.
2- What does this proverb mean?
3- Migrating birds fly very long distances.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- made 2- incorrect

7 Punctuate the sentences:
Tourism is important for Egypt.

8 Write a paragraph:
"My favorite games"
My favorite games are video games. Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

Revision Test (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- France 2- sailing 3- green 4- bottle

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- preserve 2- doll's 3- setting 4- migrate

3 Read and complete the text:
1- making up 2- toys 3- figures 4- outside

4 Read the text and answer:
1- cruel 2- impolite 3- approval
4- Goha and his son.
5- You cannot win the approval of all people. It's impossible to please all people.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Eagles migrate to other continents.
2- How did Fareeda help her neighbors?
3- I think football is so exciting.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- start 2- well

7 Punctuate the sentences:
If I am hungry, I'll eat a snack.

8 Write an email:
From: doha@school.net
To: asmaa@gmail.com
Subject: The place I would like to visit
Hi Asmaa,
I hope you're doing well. You asked me about the place I wanted to visit. I would like to visit France. I love French people so



much. I want to visit the beautiful places there. I read that France has a lot of amazing places to visit. Tell me about the place you would like to visit.
Talk to you soon,
Doha

Revision Test (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- desert 2- wildlife 3- tent 4- sand

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- fascinating 2- help 3- collect 4- camp

3 Read and complete the text:
1- playing 2-skateboards 3- knee 4- hurts

4 Read the text and answer:
1- set 2- doll's 3- figures
4- Ibrahim had a big collection of marbles.
5- His cuddly toy was his favorite toy.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1-Asser didn't like train sets at all.
2- How often does Tamer volunteer?
3- Many birds migrate to find hot weather.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- when 2- in front

7 Punctuate the sentences:
When does Hana play her favorite game?

8 Write a paragraph:
"What did you do yesterday?"
Yesterday, I did many things. I got up at 7. First, I had breakfast with my family. Then, I went to school. I met my friends there. We studied our lessons. After school, I played tennis with my friends. It was so exciting! I went back home at 3. It was a great day.

Revision Test (7)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- shopping 2- toys 3- dad 4- train

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- Eco-tourism 2- joystick
3- ending 4- adore

3 Read and complete the text:
1- artifacts 2- gold 3- granite 4- durable

4 Read the text and answer:
1- pyramids 2- Sphinx 3- lion
4- Because they thought that there was another life after death.
5- They put the foods, jewels and gold of the king with him in his tomb.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- The calendar is next to the board.
2- Where can you see these birds?
3- Farah traveled by bus to see her cousins.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- making up 2- was working

7 Punctuate the sentences:
Is this your new games console, Amira?

8 Write an email:
From: hoda@school.net
To: nesma@gmail.com
Subject: the story of an interesting book
Hi Nesma,
I hope you're well. I read a story yesterday about a boy who is called Peter. Peter was a boy who lived in a village. He worked as a shepherd. Every day he took the sheep to eat and he rested while the sheep ate the delicious grass. One day, he felt lonely and bored and decided to have some fun. he shouted "Wolf! There's a wolf!" to the villagers in the field. The villagers ran to save them. He was lying under a tree and he was laughing. "There is no wolf! It was a joke!" he said. The villagers were very angry. What do you think of this story?
See you soon,
Hoda

Revision Test (8)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- iron 2- meteorites
3- craftsmen 4- precious

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- characters 2- durable 3- reef 4- figures

3 Read and complete the text:
1- habitats 2- close 3- wildlife 4- damage

4 Read the text and answer:
1- posters 2- always 3- the worst
4- He plays it at the school playground and at the club as well.

5- He always plays football (every day).

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- I really like playing board games.
2- What did some people want to grow?
3- They make lemonade to sell in the market.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- quietly 2- skipping

7 Punctuate the sentences:
The Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold.

8 Write a paragraph:
"My favorite pet"
My favorite pet is a dog. It is my dog, Roy. I love it because it is very cute and loyal. He is like a friend to me. I feed it three times a day. It eats dry food. I love playing with it. Dogs are amazing pets. They learn very quickly. My dog Roy sleeps in a small house.

Revision Test (9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- six 2- museum 3- - guide 4- gold

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- preserve 2- doll's 3- setting 4- migrate

3 Read and complete the text:
1- review 2- setting 3- characters 4- ending

4 Read the text and answer:
1- parents 2- fathers and mothers 3- adults
4- They need someone to feed them, dress them, carry them, and keep them happy.
5- They need their mother's help.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Lama painted a picture to put in the exhibition.
2- What could you do to help the environment? 3- There are lots of different habitats in Egypt.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- doesn't finish 2- must

7 Punctuate the sentences:
I went to the sports center on Monday.

8 Write an email:
From: reem@gmail.com
To: dina@yahoo.com
Subject: My plans for the next summer vacation
Hi Dina,
I hope you're well. On my next vacation, I'm excited about going on a snorkel safari! I can't wait to see all the colorful fish and coral under the sea. I also heard that the desert sunsets are amazing, so I want to watch them too. Another cool thing is going on a boat ride on the river and watching birds. I'm also looking forward to visiting historical places. It's going to be so fun exploring new places and doing new activities!
See you soon,
Dina

Revision Test (10)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- birds 2- ostrich 3- fly 4- hummingbird

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- sustainable 2- moral 3- gold 4- film

3 Read and complete the text:
1- artifacts 2- culture 3- gold 4- granite

4 Read the text and answer:
1- air 2- milk 3- boring
4- Because they are clever and can learn to do many things.
5- They have living babies.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Why do the old people use a multi-grip?
2- My favorite toy was a train set.
3- What did King Midas wish for?

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- really 2- happening

7 Punctuate the sentences:
- The mask of Tutankhamun was found in his tomb.

8 Write a paragraph:
"The Ancient Egyptians"
The Ancient Egyptian history is great. They made a lot of artifacts. They built wonderful pyramids. They are amazing! We should visit the pyramids. We can explore and



learn so much. It'll be so much fun! The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to improve.

Revision Test (11)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- country 2- snorkeling
3- desert 4- Eco-tourism

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- nature camera 2- Granite
3- laugh 4- setting

3 Read and complete the text:
1- bottle 2- reply 3- message 4- excited

4 Read the text and answer:
1- seats 2- playground 3- pond
4- Tennis and volleyball.
5- In summer and on Fridays and Saturdays all the year.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- You can see lots of fish and coral reefs.
2- My sister had a big doll's house.
3- What is Rawan's advice for teenagers?

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- will buy 2- protect

7 Punctuate the sentences:
- Who knows Ras Mohammed National Park?

8 Write an email:
From: samir@gmail.com
To: farid@hotmail.com
Subject: An eco-tourism vacation
Hi Farid,
I hope you're well. I went on an eco-tourism vacation, and it was so much fun! We learned to respect nature while traveling. We saw amazing animals, like colorful birds and cute monkeys. We went hiking in the beautiful forests and climbed up high mountains. I loved taking photos of the pretty flowers and the amazing views. It was the best vacation ever because we got to have fun and also take care of our planet!
See you soon,
Samir



Revision Test (12)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- good 2- happy 3- world 4- solve

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- granite 2- gloves 3- ending 4- sail

3 Read and complete the text:
1- carved 2- artifact 3- humans 4- intact

4 Read the text and answer:
1- Alexandria 2- preparatory 3- Fareeda
4- They did a beach clean-up.
5- To study social sciences.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Nadia has some very pretty marbles.
2- How did they find the message?
3- What could you do for your neighbors?

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- letting 2- next

7 Punctuate the sentences:
Singing birds don't build nests.

8 Write a paragraph:
"The Red Sea beaches"
The Red Sea is an amazing place. The Red Sea has beautiful beaches. The beaches are clean. They have blue water. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea. They can play on the beaches. They can also swim in the sea and do water sports.